

**SUPER**

# **GOAL 2**

**MANUEL DOS SANTOS**



**@saudienglish**



وزارة التعليم  
Ministry of Education  
2024 - 1446

## SuperGoal 2 Student Book

*SuperGoal Series* Copyright © 2009 by McGraw-Hill Education

Adaptation Copyright © 2024 by McGraw-Hill Education (UK) Limited

Published by arrangement with McGraw Hill LLC

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. NO PART OF THIS BOOK MAY BE REPRODUCED OR TRANSMITTED IN ANY FORM OR BY ANY MEANS, ELECTRONIC OR MECHANICAL, INCLUDING PHOTOCOPYING, RECORDING OR BY INFORMATION STORAGE AND RETRIEVAL SYSTEMS, WITHOUT PERMISSION IN WRITING FROM MCGRAW HILL.

ISBN: 9781398928480

*Publisher:* Jorge Rodríguez Hernández

*Editorial director:* Anita Raducanu

*Development editors:* Ana Laura Martínez Vázquez, Janet Battiste

*Art direction:* Heloisa Yara Tiburtius

*Interior design and production:* Page2, LLC

*Cover design:* Page2, LLC

*Photo coordinator:* Kevin Sharpe

Photo Credits: The Photo Credits section for this book on page 260 is considered an extension of the copyright page.

© 2024. Exclusive rights by McGraw-Hill Education (UK) Limited for manufacture and export. This book cannot be re-exported from the country to which it is sold by McGraw-Hill Education (UK) Limited.



[www.mheducation.com](http://www.mheducation.com)



وزارة التعليم  
Ministry of Education  
2024 - 1446

@saudienglish

# Contents

		Scope and Sequence	iv
Term 1	Unit	<b>1</b> Are You Here on Vacation?	<b>2</b>
	Unit	<b>2</b> What Are They Making?	<b>10</b>
	Unit	<b>3</b> Who's Who	<b>18</b>
	Unit	<b>4</b> Favorite Pastimes	<b>26</b>
	Unit	<b>5</b> Is There Any Ice Cream?	<b>34</b>
			<b>EXPANSION Units 1–5</b>
Term 2	Unit	<b>6</b> What Was It Like?	<b>50</b>
	Unit	<b>7</b> What Happened?	<b>58</b>
	Unit	<b>8</b> What's Wrong?	<b>66</b>
	Unit	<b>9</b> Let's Go Out	<b>74</b>
	Unit	<b>10</b> It's a Bargain!	<b>82</b>
	Unit	<b>11</b> There's No Comparison	<b>90</b>
		<b>EXPANSION Units 6–11</b>	<b>98</b>
Term 3	Unit	<b>12</b> It's Going to Be Fun!	<b>106</b>
	Unit	<b>13</b> What's the Weather Like?	<b>114</b>
	Unit	<b>14</b> Could You Do Me a Favor?	<b>122</b>
	Unit	<b>15</b> Today's News	<b>130</b>
	Unit	<b>16</b> Have You Ever...?	<b>138</b>
			<b>EXPANSION Units 12–16</b>
		Vocabulary	<b>154</b>
		Self Reflections	<b>164</b>
		Irregular Verbs	<b>180</b>
		Audio Track List	<b>181</b>



# Scope and Sequence

	Unit Title	Functions	Grammar
1	Are You Here on Vacation? Pages 2–9	Greet people / Say goodbye Introduce yourself and others Ask for and give personal information Express thanks / Apologize Ask for and give directions	Simple present of the verb <i>be</i> Information questions: <i>how, what, when, where, who, why</i> Prepositions of place
2	What Are They Making? Pages 10–17	Express approval and disapproval Talk about present ongoing activities	Present progressive Imperative for commands and instructions Prepositions of place
3	Who's Who Pages 18–25	Describe professions Talk about professional goals	Simple present tense <i>Wh-</i> questions in the simple present Verb <i>want</i> + infinitive Relative pronouns: <i>who, that, which</i>
4	Favorite Pastimes Pages 26–33	Describe daily activities and routines Ask about and tell how often you do activities Talk about abilities Describe hobbies	Questions with <i>how often</i> Frequency expressions: <i>once a week, etc.</i> Adverbs of frequency: <i>always, often, etc.</i> <i>Know how to</i> Gerunds and infinitives after verbs
5	Is There Any Ice Cream? Pages 34–41	Talk about foods Order from a menu Express preferences with <i>would like</i>	Count/Noncount nouns Expressions of quantity: <i>some/any</i> Partitives <i>Too/Enough</i>
EXPANSION Units 1–5 Pages 42–49		<b>Language Review</b> <b>Reading:</b> Let the Games Begin <b>Reading:</b> Foods: Truths and Lies <b>Writing:</b> Write about a healthy/unhealthy food	
6	What Was It Like? Pages 50–57	Ask and answer about past activities Describe past activities Express an opinion	Simple past tense: <i>be</i> Simple past tense: regular / irregular verbs Intensifiers with adjectives
7	What Happened? Pages 58–65	Retell an event Express feelings Give reasons with <i>why</i> and <i>because</i> Show agreement with <i>so</i> and <i>neither</i>	<i>There was/There were</i> Adverb: <i>ago</i> Pronouns: <i>someone, no one, nothing, anything</i> Conjunctions: <i>because, so</i>
8	What's Wrong? Pages 66–73	Ask and talk about health Name parts of the body Talk about illnesses and their symptoms Make suggestions and give advice	<i>Should/Shouldn't</i> Clauses with <i>when</i> Subject/object pronouns and possessive adjectives/pronouns





Listening	Pronunciation	Reading	Writing
Listen for specific information about a hotel stay	Intonation of <i>yes/no</i> and <i>wh</i> -questions	The Place to Stay	Create a hotel registration form and complete it with personal information Present information about youth hostels in your country (Project)
Listen and make inferences to identify speakers	/i/ and /ɪ/	E-Learning Is Easy!	Describe how the Internet is a useful tool for students Write a script for a how-to video (Project)
Listen for specific information about a profession and career goals	Reduction of <i>want to</i>	Jobs and Employment in Saudi Arabia	Write about your dream job Write about people's occupations (Project)
Listen for specific information about free-time activities	Reduction of <i>do you</i>	Sky High!	Write about your hobby or pastime Write about an unusual hobby or pastime (Project)
Listen for specific information from a meal order	Plural endings /s/, /z/, /əz/	Globalization of Foods	Write a recipe Write a typical menu from your country (Project)
<p><b>Project:</b> Research a healthful diet  <b>Chant Along:</b> Just Another Day  <b>Writing:</b> Write about a typical day in a person's life  <b>Project:</b> Write verses about a typical day in your life</p>			
Listen for specific information from radio reviews	Past tense endings /t/, /d/, /ɪd/	Art of the Pen: Arabic Calligraphy	Write about an interesting museum, performance, or sports event that you attended Make a brochure about an event in your town (Project)
Listen for specific information about an accident	The /h/ sound	So You Want to Be Cool	Write a witness report about an accident Take a survey about what makes your friends happy, sad, etc. (Project)
Listen to match illnesses with pictures of people	Consonant blends with s	Atchoo! Is It a Cold or the Flu?	Write about what you should do when you have the flu Present home remedies for common illnesses (Project)



# Scope and Sequence

	Unit Title	Functions	Grammar
<b>9</b>	<b>Let's Go Out</b> Pages 74–81	Talk about free-time activities and chores Make suggestions Express obligation Make excuses	<i>Should, why don't/doesn't...?</i> , and <i>let's</i> for suggestions <i>Go + verb + -ing</i> <i>Have to/Had to</i> and <i>Don't/Didn't have to</i> <i>Must/Mustn't</i> for obligation and prohibition
<b>10</b>	<b>It's a Bargain!</b> Pages 82–89	Talk about shopping Identify possessions Express preferences	Possessive adjectives and pronouns Question word: <i>whose</i> Pronoun: <i>one/ones</i> Quantitative: <i>too</i> Modal verbs: <i>can, may, could, might</i>
<b>11</b>	<b>There's No Comparison</b> Pages 90–97	Make comparisons State opinions Talk about interesting facts	Comparative and superlative forms of adjectives <i>So...that/Such...that</i>
<b>EXPANSION</b> Units 6–11 Pages 98–105		<b>Language Review</b> <b>Reading:</b> Paris: The City of Light	
<b>12</b>	<b>It's Going to Be Fun!</b> Pages 106–113	Ask about and describe vacations Plan a vacation	Future with <i>be going to</i> Information questions Position of adjectives Adverbs of manner
<b>13</b>	<b>What's the Weather Like?</b> Pages 114–121	Talk about the weather Talk about seasons Talk about future activities Make predictions	Future with <i>will</i> Information questions Conditional with present and future forms Functions with <i>will</i>
<b>14</b>	<b>Could You Do Me a Favor?</b> Pages 122–129	Make and respond to requests Make and respond to offers Give and take phone messages Expressions with <i>will</i>	<i>Can, could, will, would</i> <i>I'll, Let me</i> <i>Want + object noun/pronoun + infinitive</i> <i>Tell and ask + object noun/pronoun + infinitive</i>
<b>15</b>	<b>Today's News</b> Pages 130–137	Talk about the news Ask and answer questions about past ongoing activities Tell narrative stories in the past	Past progressive Past progressive + <i>when</i> Adverbs of degree <i>Could</i> and <i>was/were able to</i>
<b>16</b>	<b>Have You Ever...?</b> Pages 138–145	Talk about activities you have and haven't done	Present perfect Present perfect versus simple past Review of present tenses and simple past
<b>EXPANSION</b> Units 12–16 Pages 146–153		<b>Language Review</b> <b>Reading:</b> Success! <b>Project:</b> Research a role model	

Listening	Pronunciation	Reading	Writing
Listen to phone conversations for excuses	Reduction of <i>have + to</i>	Someone Has to Do It!	Write about how parents and teenagers feel about homework Take a survey on common excuses (Project)
Listen to complete information in an ad	Linking adjacent sounds	The Best Place to Shop—and Be!	Compare shopping in a store and shopping online Write and design a department store advertisement (Project)
Listen for specific details from a tour guide	The <i>er</i> sound	Vision 2030 Kingdom of Saudi Arabia: Building a Brighter Future for All	Write about something from a book of records Present an ancient monument in your country (Project)

**Project:** Research tourist sites in your country

**Chant Along:** The (Right) Answer

Listen to vacation plans for specific information	/æ/ and /ɒ/	The Stones of Al-Ula	Write an email describing a place you know or would like to visit Present a picnic plan (Project)
Listen for specific information from a weather report	The /l/ sound	Can Weather Affect People's Moods?	Write about how the weather affects you Present the weather in a place you would like to visit (Project)
Listen for general understanding of phone messages	Reduction of <i>could you</i> and <i>would you</i>	Dear Daughter	Write a note to ask for a favor Write about common favors (Project)
Listen to conversations for general understanding	Word stress	Age Means Nothing	Write a summary of a news story Present an unusual news event (Project)
Listen for specific information about travel experiences	The /v/ sound in <i>have</i>	Ships of the Desert	Write about someone who has had an exciting life Present an extreme sport or activity (Project)

**Chant Along:** Travel the World Over

**Writing:** Write about a place where you want to travel

**Project:** Write a verse about world travel

**Chant Along:** I Never Found Gold Until I Got Back Home

# 1 Are You Here on Vacation?



## 1 Listen and Discuss

What kinds of international festivals do you know about? Where do they take place?

Are you here for the festival?

Yes, I am. My name is Jean Fournier.

How do you spell your last name?

F-O-U-R-N-I-E-R.

Excuse me. Where's the restaurant?

Behind the elevators, on your right.

It's good to see you, Colin.

How are you?

Fine, thanks. How about you?

**INTERNATIONAL WRITERS FESTIVAL**

WELCOME ALL PARTICIPANTS!



Lee, I'd like to introduce you to Joe.

Nice to meet you, Lee.

Nice to meet you, too.

Bye. Take care.

Good night.  
See you tomorrow.

My name is Robert Atkinson,  
but everyone calls me Bob.

Hi, Bob. I'm Francisco Ramirez.  
But my nickname is Pancho.

I'm Faris. I'm from Saudi Arabia.  
Where are you from, Ketan?

Well, I was born in Mumbai,  
but I was raised in New Delhi  
and I still live there.

## Quick Check

- A. Vocabulary.** Find and write down the greetings and farewells.
- B. Comprehension.** Who are they? Say and spell their names to a partner.
1. He's from India.
  2. His nickname is Pancho.
  3. He's checking into the hotel.
  4. His friend is introducing him to Joe.
  5. He's from Saudi Arabia.

## 2 Pair Work

- A.** Imagine you just arrived at the writers festival.
1. Greet someone you know.
  2. Introduce yourself to someone.
  3. Introduce a friend to someone.
  4. Say goodbye to someone.
- B.** Work with another pair. Introduce your partner to them.
- C.** Choose one of the conversations and continue it. Present it to the class.

# 1 Are You Here on Vacation?



## 3 Grammar

### Simple Present of the Verb *Be*

Use the simple present of the verb *be* to talk about situations and events that exist in the present or that are always true.

I'm on vacation. Riyadh **is** in Saudi Arabia.

#### Yes-No Questions (?)

**Are** you here on vacation?

**Is** Ahmed happy in his new job?

**Is** it very cold in your country?

**Is** the museum open on Fridays?

**Are** you here for the festival?

**Are** they from Egypt?

#### Short Answers (+)

Yes, I **am**.

Yes, he **is**.

Yes, it **is**.

Yes, it **is**.

Yes, we **are**.

Yes, they **are**.

#### Short Answers (-)

No, I'm **not**.

No, he **isn't**.

No, it **isn't**.

No, it **isn't**.

No, we **aren't**.

No, they **aren't**.

### Information Questions: *How, What, When, Where, Who, Why*

**How're\*** you doing? (How + are)

Fine, thanks.

**What are** your names?

My name is Saud, and his name is Ali.

**When's\*** the festival? (When + is)

It's in February.

**Where are** you from?

I'm from Jeddah.

**Who's** that tall man? (Who + is)

That's my uncle.

**Why're\*** you studying? (Why + are)

Because we have a test!

**A.** Complete the conversation. Use the correct form of the verb **be** or short answers with **be**. You can use contractions. Then practice with a partner.

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_ you here on vacation?

**B:** No, I \_\_\_\_\_ here for the writers festival.

**A:** It sounds like fun. So, what \_\_\_\_\_ your job?

**B:** I \_\_\_\_\_ a novelist, and my friend \_\_\_\_\_ a poet.

We \_\_\_\_\_ here for the festival.

\_\_\_\_\_ you here for the festival, too?

**A:** No, \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_ here on vacation.

I \_\_\_\_\_ here with my friend, too.

He \_\_\_\_\_ there near the reception desk.

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_ he the tall man in the red shirt?

**A:** Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. Let me introduce you to him.

**B.** Interview a classmate. Ask for this personal information.

1. name

2. spelling of first and last names

3. age and date of birth

4. nationality

5. address

6. telephone number

7. email address

8. occupation



4 وزارة التعليم These are informal and should be avoided in written form.

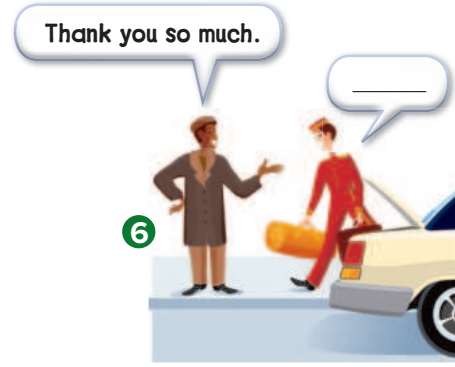
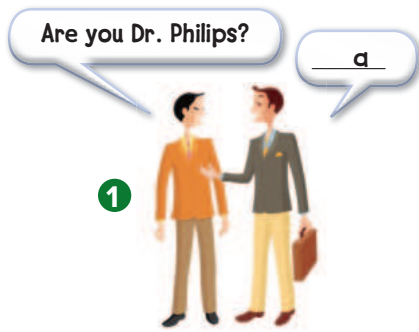
Ministry of Education  
2024 - 1446

@saudienglish



C. Match the responses to the situations. Then practice the conversations with a partner.

- a. No, I'm Luke Robbins.      d. Fine, thanks.  
 b. That's all right.          e. You're welcome.  
 c. Nice to meet you.          f. William. But my friends call me Bill.



## 4 Listening

Listen to Mr. Wilson's conversation with a hotel bellhop. Complete the information about him.

Nationality	
Room—floor	
Number of days at hotel	
Purpose of visit	

## 5 Pronunciation

Listen. Note the rising and the falling intonation. Then practice.

Are you a student?  
Are they from Jordan?  
Is he on vacation?

What's her name?  
Where is she from?  
Who are they?



# 1 Are You Here on Vacation?

رابط الدرس الرقمي



www.iem.edu.sa

## 6 Conversation



### Real Talk

**Here you are.** = an expression used when you give something to someone

**Have a nice stay.** = an expression used to wish someone a good time in a place

**Desk clerk:** Can I help you?

**Ibrahim:** Yes, please. I have a reservation. My name's Ibrahim Ghazali.

**Desk clerk:** Are you here for the conference?

**Ibrahim:** No, I'm here on vacation with my family.

**Desk clerk:** How do you spell your last name?

**Ibrahim:** G-H-A-Z-A-L-I.

**Desk clerk:** Yes, Mr. Ghazali. How long are you staying with us?

**Ibrahim:** Four days.

**Desk clerk:** Please fill in this form. May I have your credit card, please?

**Ibrahim:** [Here you are.](#)

**Desk clerk:** Thank you. Room seven-oh-five. Here's your key card. [Have a nice stay.](#)

**Ibrahim:** Thank you. Oh, excuse me. Where can I find out about city tours?

**Desk clerk:** With the concierge. He's at the desk to the right.

## About the Conversation

1. What's Ibrahim's last name?
2. Is Ibrahim at the hotel on business?
3. How is he paying for the hotel?
4. How long is he staying in the hotel?
5. What's his room number?

## Your Turn

Imagine you are checking into a hotel and talking to the desk clerk. Role-play the conversation with a partner. Then change roles.



## 7 About You

Role-play with a partner. Imagine you are on a trip. Answer the questions for an immigration officer.

1. What's the purpose of your trip?
2. How long are you staying?
3. What's your address in this country?
4. Do you have any family here?
5. What's their address?





## 8 Reading

### Before Reading

What do you know about youth hostels?  
What do you know about S.A.Y.H.A.?

## The Place to Stay

Many young people traveling around the world are backpackers or students on a low budget. They want to see the world, but they can't afford to pay for regular hotels. So youth hostels are the perfect solution for travelers without a lot of money to spend. Today there are more than 4000 hostels in over 80 countries, and the Saudi Arabian Youth Hostels Association (S.A.Y.H.A) offers accommodations in 21 cities across the Kingdom.

The accommodations in hostels are inexpensive because guests usually share rooms and bathrooms. Most hostels have a laundry room, telephones, Internet connection, and a restaurant. Some hostels also offer cooking facilities, such as a kitchen with pots and dishes. Youth hostels are usually in interesting places where young people can learn about the local monuments, history, and culture. Some hostels are even inside old historic buildings, castles, and on boats.

Hostels are definitely the place for socializing. The guests, who are from different cities or countries, have the opportunity to meet other young people and share experiences. Many hostels organize tours and fun activities. For example, S.A.Y.H.A. holds sports and painting competitions, and there are also prizes for the best community projects. So when traveling, youth hostels are the best place to stay and make new friends.

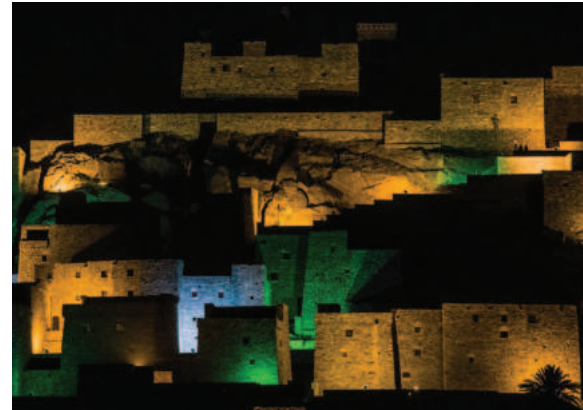
### After Reading

Answer **yes** or **no**.

1. \_\_\_\_ Young tourists are usually rich.
2. \_\_\_\_ The rooms in youth hostels are usually cheap.
3. \_\_\_\_ You are allowed to cook in all youth hostels.
4. \_\_\_\_ Hostels are good places for meeting people.

### Discussion

Where do you stay when you travel? Describe the places where you stay.



# 1 Are You Here on Vacation?



## 9 Writing

A. Check (✓) the phrase that is more polite.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> a. Can I help you, sir?             | <input type="checkbox"/> b. What do you want?                   |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> a. I want to make a reservation.    | <input type="checkbox"/> b. I would like to make a reservation. |
| 3. <input type="checkbox"/> a. Tell me where the restaurant is. | <input type="checkbox"/> b. Excuse me. Where is the restaurant? |
| 4. <input type="checkbox"/> a. May I have your credit card?     | <input type="checkbox"/> b. Give me your credit card.           |
| 5. <input type="checkbox"/> a. Say that again.                  | <input type="checkbox"/> b. Could you repeat that, please?      |

### Writing Corner

In formal situations, such as at a hotel, use polite language to make requests.

1. *Would like* is a polite form of *want*.

I want to make a reservation. → I'd like to make a reservation.

Do you want breakfast? → Would you like breakfast?

2. Use *Can / Could / May* to politely ask a question.

Spell your last name. → Could you spell your last name?

Give me your passport. → May I see your passport, please?



B. Read the questions. Decide what information is being asked for and write it in the chart.

Question	Information
1. What is your name, please?	
2. Could you spell your last name?	
3. What is your address and telephone number?	
4. What day are you arriving?	<i>arrival date</i>
5. How long (many days) are you staying?	<i>length of stay</i>
6. How many guests is the room for?	
7. May I have your passport, please?	
8. How are you paying for the room?	

C. Create a hotel or hostel registration form. Use ideas from the chart, and add any other information you think is important. Give your hotel a name and design a logo. Then, with a partner, practice asking for information to fill in your registration form.

## 10 Project

Find out about youth hostels in your country. Present the information to the class.

# 11 Form, Meaning and Function

## Prepositions of Place: *across from, between, next to, on, near, far from*



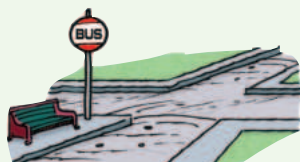
The park is **across from** the school.



The bank is **between** the post office and the restaurant.



The pharmacy is **next to** the bookstore.



The bus stop is **on** the corner.



The museum is **near** the hotel.

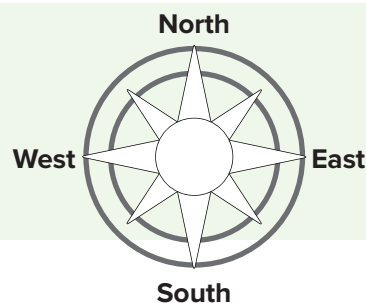


The airport is **far from** town.

## Asking for and Giving Directions

Can you tell me where [the nearest bank] is?  
Excuse me. Where is [the Art Museum]?  
Is this the right way to [the subway station]?  
How can I get to the [post office]?

Turn right onto Park Avenue.  
Turn left at the next corner.  
Go straight ahead for two blocks.  
Go east on Second Street.



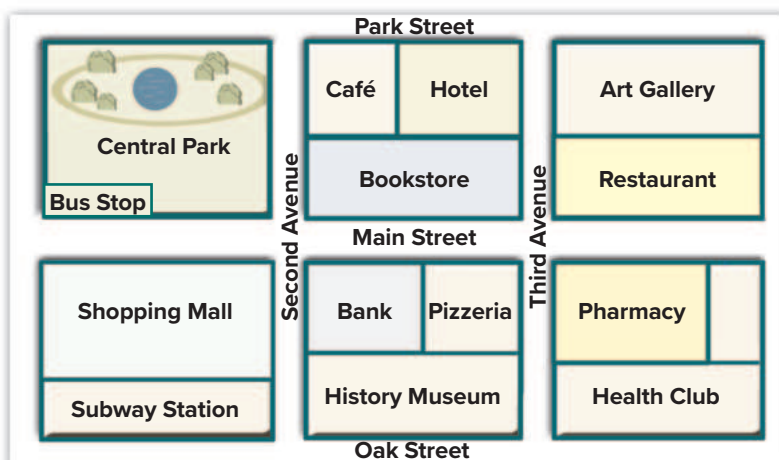
### A. Match the questions with the answers.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Is there a restaurant in the mall?
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Is the airport near the city?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Excuse me. Where's the bus stop?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Is the university north of here?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Is this right the way to the hotel?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Is the post office next to the park?

- a. Yes. Go straight ahead for one more block.
- b. No. It's between the bank and the health club.
- c. No, it isn't. It's to the south.
- d. Yes, there is. It's across from the bookstore.
- e. No, it isn't. It's far from the city.
- f. It's on the corner of First and Main.

### B. Work with a partner. Describe the location of places on the map. Use **across from, between, next to, on, near, and far from**.

### C. Work with a partner. Student A is a hotel guest: ask for directions to places on the map. Student B is a hotel concierge: give directions. Then change roles.





# 2 What Are They Making?

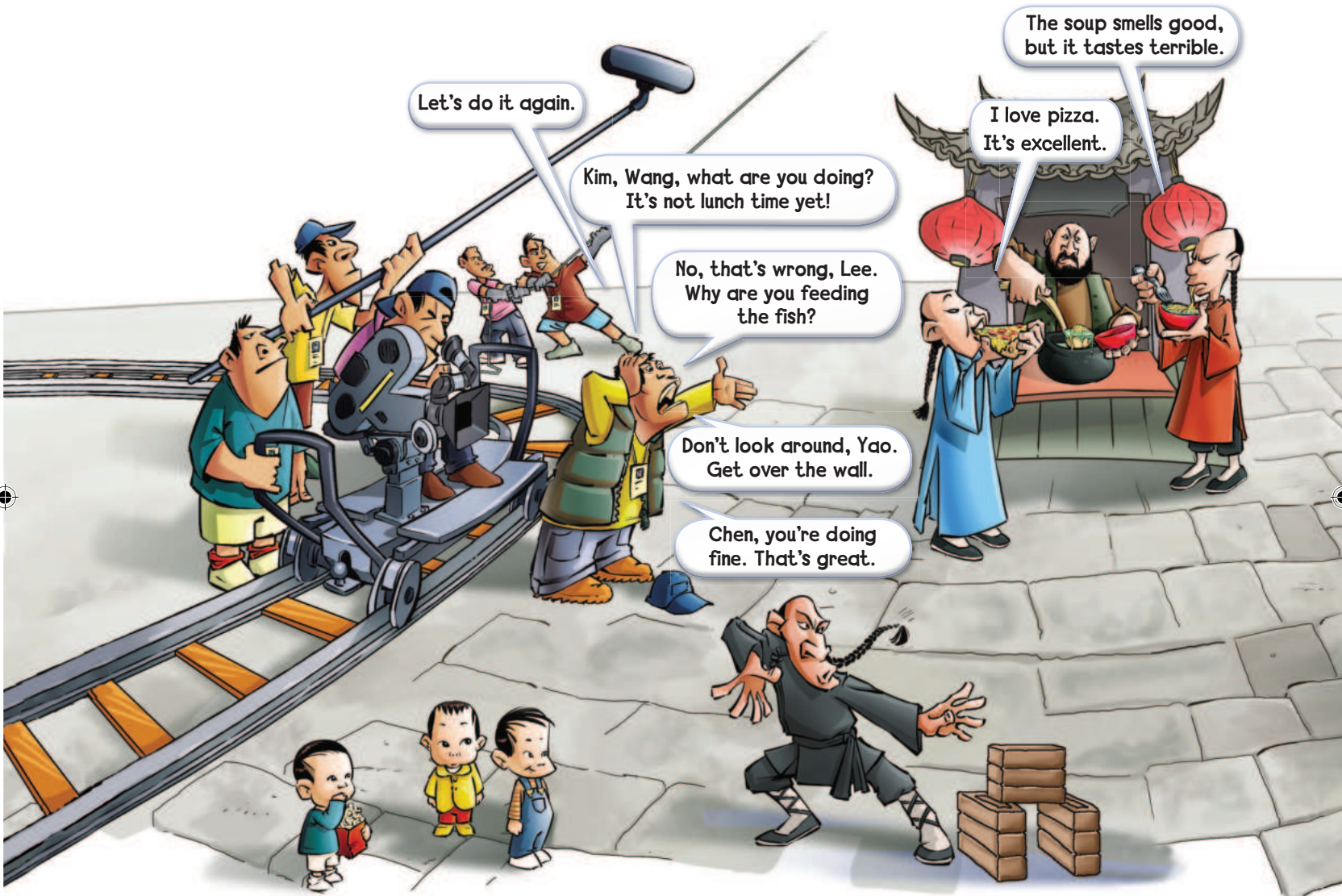
رابطہ المدرس الرقمي



www.ien.edu.sa

## 1 Listen and Discuss

What do you think the TV film is about? What is happening?



### Quick Check ✓

**A. Vocabulary.** Find words to express approval and disapproval.

**B. Comprehension.** Match the parts of the sentences.

- |                                     |                              |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. The actor at the food stand ____ | a. is running away.          |
| 2. The director ____                | b. is shouting for help.     |
| 3. The man near the pond ____       | c. is talking to the actors. |
| 4. The man on the wall ____         | d. is feeding the fish.      |
| 5. The old man ____                 | e. isn't enjoying the soup.  |













## 2 Pair Work

**A. Ask and answer** about the people in the TV studio.

-  What is the cook doing?
-  He's making soup.
-  Is Lee feeding the fish?
-  Yes, he is.

**B.** This story takes place in the past, many years ago. With a partner, find things that are wrong in the picture.

-  What's wrong in the picture?
-  Well, the old man is holding a cell phone.

## 2 What Are They Making?



www.iem.edu.sa

### 3 Grammar

#### Present Progressive

Use the present progressive for actions happening now.

##### Information Questions (?)

What	<b>am</b>	I	<b>doing</b> now?
	<b>are</b>	you	
	<b>is</b>	he she	
	<b>are</b>	we they	

##### Affirmative (+)

<b>I'm</b>	<b>working.</b>
<b>You're</b>	
<b>He's</b>	
<b>She's</b>	
<b>We're</b>	
<b>They're</b>	

##### Negative (-)

<b>I'm not</b>	<b>working.</b>
<b>You aren't</b>	
<b>He isn't</b>	
<b>She isn't</b>	
<b>We aren't</b>	
<b>They aren't</b>	

##### Yes-No Questions (?)

<b>Am</b>	I	<b>reading?</b>
<b>Are</b>	you	
<b>Is</b>	he she	
<b>Are</b>	we they	

##### Short Answers (+)

Yes,	I	<b>am.</b>
	you	<b>are.</b>
	he she	<b>is.</b>
	we they	<b>are.</b>

##### Short Answers (-)

No,	I'm	<b>not.</b>
	you	<b>aren't.</b>
	he she	<b>isn't.</b>
	we they	<b>aren't.</b>

We don't usually use the progressive with verbs like the following: *like, love, want, see, smell, taste, hear.*

I **like** martial arts films. I **don't hear** anything.

We can also use the present progressive for some actions in the future.

**A:** What are you doing **tomorrow**?

**B:** I'm **going** to the park.

**A.** Complete the conversation. Use the present progressive or simple present form of the verbs in parentheses.

**Adel:** Excuse me. What \_\_\_\_\_ (1. happen)?

**Greg:** They \_\_\_\_\_ (2. make) a TV series.

**Adel:** What kind of series is it?

**Greg:** It's a detective story.

**Adel:** Oh, I \_\_\_\_\_ (3. love) detective stories.

**Greg:** Eric McGuire is the director. That's him over there.

He \_\_\_\_\_ (4. talk) to Brad Novak, the actor.

**Adel:** Who is that tall guy over there?

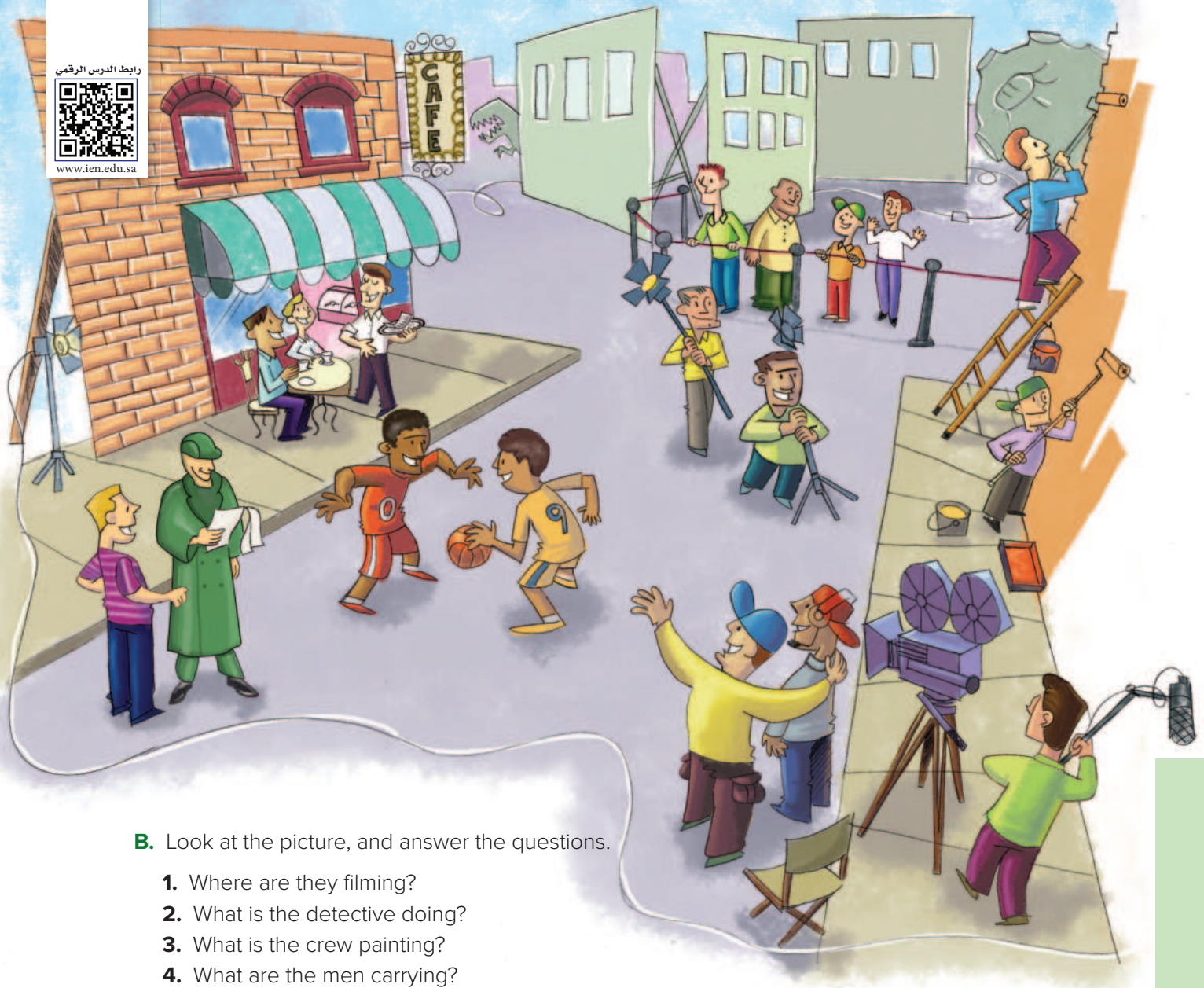
He \_\_\_\_\_ (5. wear) a raincoat.

**Greg:** Oh, that's Adam Scott. He usually \_\_\_\_\_ (6. play) a smart detective. In this scene, he \_\_\_\_\_ (7. hear) an explosion and goes to investigate.

**Adel:** Oh, look. They \_\_\_\_\_ (8. start) to film.







B. Look at the picture, and answer the questions.

1. Where are they filming?
2. What is the detective doing?
3. What is the crew painting?
4. What are the men carrying?
5. What game are the people on the street playing?
6. Who is the director talking to?
7. What are the men in the café doing?
8. What is the waiter doing?

## 4 Listening

Look at the picture above again. Listen and match with the person. Write the correct sentence numbers.

- \_\_\_\_\_ one of the people watching
- \_\_\_\_\_ one of the basketball players to the other
- \_\_\_\_\_ the director to the cameraman
- \_\_\_\_\_ one of the painters to the other
- \_\_\_\_\_ the actor playing the detective
- \_\_\_\_\_ the waiter to a customer in the café

## 5 Pronunciation

Listen. Note the difference in the two sounds. Then practice.

/i/      he      eat      read      sleep

He likes to sleep on the beach.

/I/      it      this      listen      sit

This is Bill's car.

**FYI\*** The sound /i/ is often spelled with **e**, **ea**, or **ee**.  
The sound /I/ is usually spelled with **i**.

\*FYI: For Your Information

## 2 What Are They Making?

رابط الدرس الرقمي



www.iem.edu.sa

### 6 Conversation

- Reporter:** So, Jet, how's the new project going?  
**Jet Chang:** It's going very well.  
**Reporter:** Tell me about it.  
**Jet Chang:** Well, it's a documentary series about martial arts. We're filming the studio scenes here in Hong Kong and the rest in locations all over Asia.  
**Reporter:** Are you using a stuntman for the martial arts scenes?  
**Jet Chang:** No, I'm doing the stunts **all by myself**.  
**Reporter:** Are the stunts dangerous?  
**Jet Chang:** **Not at all**. I'm trained in karate. But without proper training, people shouldn't try the stunts.  
**Reporter:** Are there any fight scenes?  
**Jet Chang:** No. Today, karate is not about fighting like you see in films. It's about physical strength and balance.  
**Reporter:** Are you planning a lot of episodes?  
**Jet Chang:** Yes, if this first episode is a success.



#### Real Talk

- So** = a way to start a new topic in a conversation  
**all by myself** = with no one else's help  
**Not at all** = a strong "no" answer

#### About the Conversation

1. What kind of project is Jet working on?
2. Where are they filming the documentary?
3. Is Jet using a stuntman?
4. What does Jet say about karate today?
5. Are they planning a lot of episodes?

#### Your Turn

Role-play with a partner. Imagine you are a reporter interviewing Jet Chang. Then change roles.

### 7 About You

1. What martial arts do you know about?
2. Do you think they're good sports? Why?
3. Do you watch documentaries?
4. What kind of documentaries do you like? Why?
5. Do they make documentaries in your country? What are they about?
6. Do you ever watch documentaries or videos online to learn more about something?







## 8 Reading

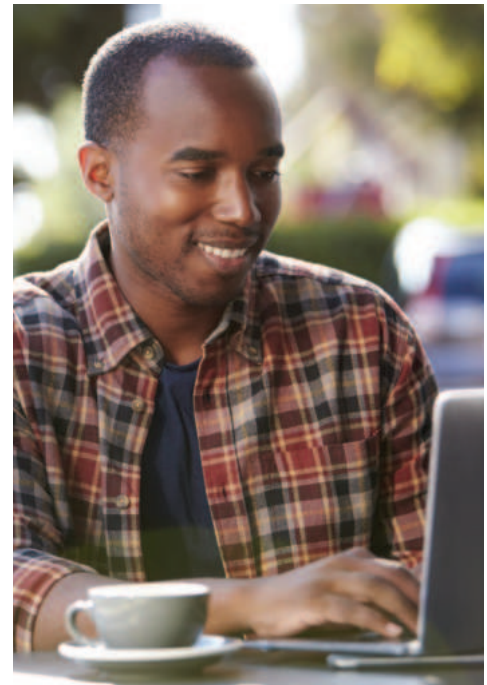
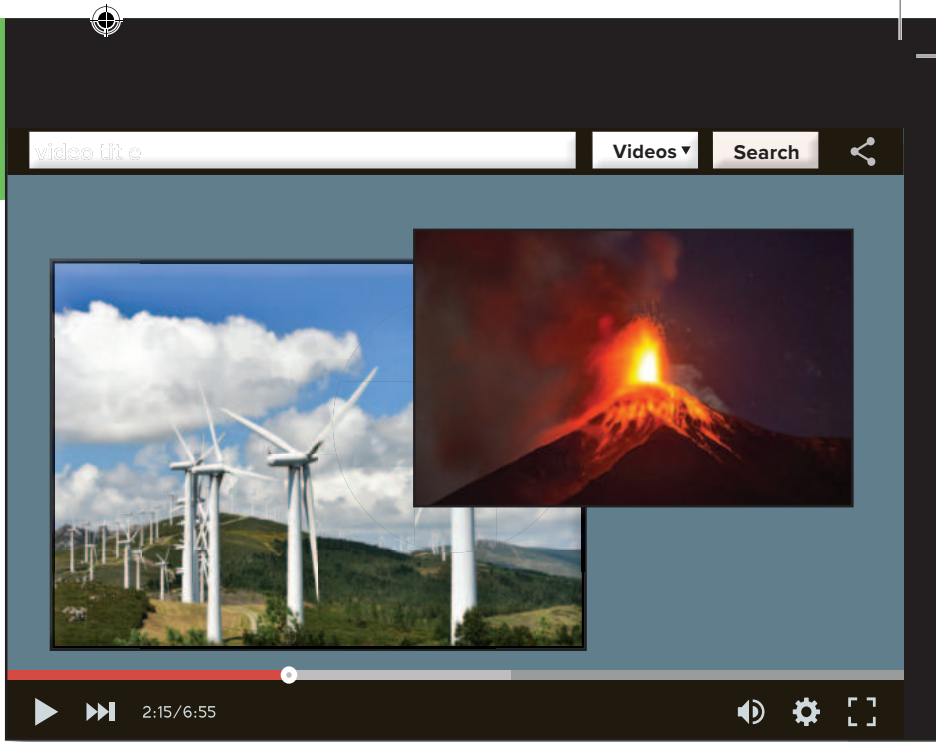
### Before Reading

What do you know about web videos and e-learning?

## E-Learning Is Easy!

You see a young executive in a public place staring into his laptop and you think: "Oh, poor guy, he's working so hard." But, in fact, perhaps he's looking at Facebook or Skype. Perhaps he's chatting online with friends or watching a video from his family who lives far away. The Internet makes it easy to communicate. Lots of people share photos and videos with their family and friends. Webcams also make it possible for others to see you when you are talking online.

But web videos and webcams are much more than that. They are becoming popular tools for e-learning. Many teachers today show web videos in their classrooms. What better way to help students understand geography or science. And there are thousands of video clips to choose from—you can see active volcanoes, the latest developments in technology, or learn more about global warming. For some students and teachers, the Web is their classroom. More and more students are taking online lessons. Some language students, for example, learn on their own from websites, and others connect with their teacher online with the help of a webcam. There are also online schools like the Khan Academy with over 3,000 video lessons in math, science, economics, and history—and it's absolutely free. Do you want to know how to make a cheesecake or learn how to play golf? Free how-to videos online can teach you. Anyone can e-learn, and it's easy!



### After Reading

Answer **yes** or **no**.

1. \_\_\_\_ Teachers usually use webcams in the classroom.
2. \_\_\_\_ More and more people are learning online.
3. \_\_\_\_ You need to pay to use video websites.
4. \_\_\_\_ You can probably learn how to fix a bike on the Web.

### Discussion

Do your teachers ever show videos in the classroom to help you learn? Do you ever use online videos to learn how to do things?

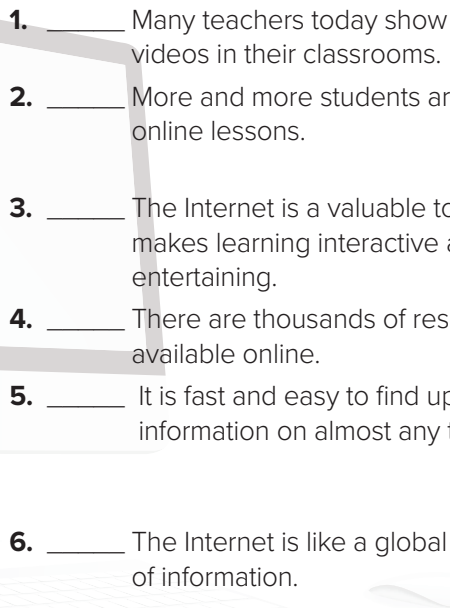


## 2 What Are They Making?



### 9 Writing

A. Match each idea on the left with the supporting detail or example. Note how the words in bold help connect the idea to the example.

- 
1. \_\_\_\_\_ Many teachers today show web videos in their classrooms.
  2. \_\_\_\_\_ More and more students are taking online lessons.
  3. \_\_\_\_\_ The Internet is a valuable tool that makes learning interactive and entertaining.
  4. \_\_\_\_\_ There are thousands of resources available online.
  5. \_\_\_\_\_ It is fast and easy to find up-to-date information on almost any topic.
  6. \_\_\_\_\_ The Internet is like a global database of information.
- a. Students, **especially** children, have fun learning through online activities and games.
  - b. **For instance**, you can watch the news in French, read an article in Arabic, or listen to a lesson in Spanish.
  - c. Students do not have to spend hours in a library **because** they have an electronic library at home or school.
  - d. What better way to help students understand subjects **such as** geography or science.
  - e. Some language students, **for example**, learn on their own from websites, and others connect with their teacher online with the help of a webcam.
  - f. Students can make use of references **like** online dictionaries, thesauruses, and encyclopedias.

#### Writing Corner

1. Connect ideas to supporting details and examples with linking words and phrases: *such as, like, for example, for instance, especially, and because.*

B. How is the Internet useful for students? Write your ideas in the chart. Then, think of details or examples and write them next to each idea.

Ideas	Details or Examples

C. Describe how the Internet is a useful tool for students. Use your notes from the chart in exercise B and other ideas from this unit.

### 10 Project

With a few of your classmates, write a script for a short how-to video. Perform the scene for the class, or record it and show the video to the class.



# 11 Form, Meaning and Function

## Imperatives

Use the imperative for commands and instructions.  
Say *please* to be polite.

### Affirmative (+)

**Sit** down. / Please **sit** down.

Also use the imperative to give advice.

**Try** the pizza. It's excellent.

### Negative (-)

**Don't sit** down. / Please **don't sit** down.

**Don't have** the soup. It tastes terrible.

## Prepositions: *inside, outside, in front of, behind, away, over, under*



The mouse is **inside** the box.  
The cat is **outside** the box.



The mouse is **in front of** the cat.  
The cat is **behind** the mouse.  
The mouse is running **away**.



The cat is **over** the mouse.  
The mouse is **under** the cat.

### A. Write the negative imperative.

1. It's not lunch time yet! \_\_\_\_\_
2. Why are you feeding the fish? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Why are you running away? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Help! He's breaking my ladder. \_\_\_\_\_
5. No! You're doing that wrong. \_\_\_\_\_

### B. Write the correct prepositions.

1. The cameraman is filming the scene. He's standing \_\_\_\_\_ the camera.
2. The thieves are getting \_\_\_\_\_ in a fast car.
3. They are filming the talk show live \_\_\_\_\_ the television studio.
4. They are making a documentary about dolphins \_\_\_\_\_ water.
5. In this scene, the stuntman is jumping \_\_\_\_\_ a wall.
6. The actors are ready to perform \_\_\_\_\_ the camera.
7. They are filming the scenes \_\_\_\_\_ on location in the desert.

### C. Work in a group to prepare a scene for a detective film. Choose a director, a cameraman, and two or three actors. The director will use the imperative and prepositions to give instructions.

# 3 Who's Who

رابط المدرس الرقمي



www.ien.edu.sa



## 1 Listen and Discuss

Do you know people who have the following jobs?  
Discuss what you like or don't like about each occupation.



◀ **Hussain Saleh** is a salesperson. He works in a furniture store, but he would like to develop his abilities. So Hussain is studying business management in college at night. He wants to be a marketing manager.

BEST VALUE FURNITURE

**Hussain Saleh**  
*Sales Representative*

Medina Road, Kilo 12  
Jeddah 23421  
Telephone: 966-2-516-9354  
Email: h\_saleh@bestvalue.com



**Judy Simpson**  
Registered Nurse

Florence Nightingale Clinic  
347 Oxford Street  
Sydney, Australia  
Telephone: 9631 0972  
Email: jsimpson@hotmail.net.au



▲ **Judy Simpson** is a nurse, and she's studying to be a child psychologist. She likes to help young children with their problems. Judy works long hours in the hospital, and she doesn't have a lot of free time.



▶ **Oscar Gutierrez** is a travel agent. He works in a travel agency. Oscar organizes tours. His job is very exciting. He travels to many exotic places for his job. Oscar wants to have his own business one day.

*Global Travel*

**Oscar Gutierrez**  
Travel Agent

Princesa 53, 12th Floor  
Madrid 28008  
Telephone (1) 9154 1830  
Email: oscar@global.com.es



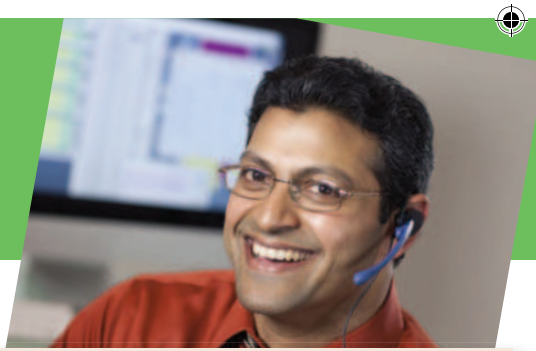
### Quick Check

**A. Vocabulary.** Name the job.

1. Helps customers on the phone \_\_\_\_\_
2. Arranges trips \_\_\_\_\_
3. Takes care of sick people \_\_\_\_\_
4. Sells things to customers \_\_\_\_\_

**B. Comprehension.** Which people like their jobs?  
Which people want to change their jobs?





**TeleWorld**  
Rajesh Narwal  
Customer Service

Trade Center Building, 17th Floor  
Sankey Road, Bangalore, India  
Telephone: 2521-6973  
Email: customerservice@teleworld.com.in

▲ **Rajesh Narwal** is a call center representative. He works for a computer software company. He says the salary is good, but he would like to learn more things. He is studying computer science. Rajesh wants to be a computer programmer.



CREATIVE SOLUTIONS

**Lee Jinho**  
Graphic Designer

253-54, Changchung-dong  
Seoul, Korea 100-392  
Telephone: 82-2-275-6784  
Email: leejinho@creative.com.kr

▲ **Lee Jinho** is a graphic designer. He works for an advertising firm. Lee produces advertisements and designs websites. He thinks his job is very stressful. He has a lot of deadlines. He needs to complete designs in a short time.



**CONSTRUMAX**




**Yusef Qassim**  
Civil Engineer

P.O. Box 3925  
Riyadh, Saudi Arabia 18411  
Telephone: 966-1-774-7874  
Email: yusefqassim@construmax.com.sa



◀ **Yusef Qassim** is an engineer. He works for a construction company. The company builds roads and bridges. Yusef is a good executive, and he hopes to be the president of the company one day.

## 2 Pair Work

**A. Ask** and **answer** about the people's jobs.



-  What does Lee Jinho do?
-  He's a graphic designer.
-  Where does he work?
-  He works in an advertising firm.

**B. Ask** and **answer** about the people's goals.

-  What does Judy want to be?
-  She wants to be a child psychologist. She likes to help children.

**C. Imagine** you are one of the people.

**Ask** and **answer** questions.

-  What do you do?
-  I'm an engineer. I work for Construmax. We build roads and bridges.



## 3 Grammar

### Simple Present Tense

Use the simple present to talk about things that are true in general or that happen all the time.

#### Affirmative (+)

I	<b>work</b>	in a hospital.
You		
We		
They		
He	<b>works</b>	
She		

#### Negative (-)

I	<b>don't</b>	<b>work</b>	in a hospital.
You			
We			
They			
He	<b>doesn't</b>		
She			

There is an *s* ending on verbs for the third person singular (for *he, she, it*).  
Add *-es* for verbs that end in *s, x, ch, or sh*: *dresses, fixes, teaches, washes*.

### Wh- Questions in the Simple Present

- Q:** Where does he/she work?      **Q:** Where do you/they work?      **Q:** What do you do?  
**A:** He/She works in a hospital.      **A:** I/They work in a hospital.      **A:** I'm a salesperson.

*What do you do?* usually means "What's your job?"

#### Professions and Verbs

The names of many jobs are like the verbs.

a teacher—teaches      a driver—drives  
 a player—plays      a translator—translates  
 a designer—designs      a writer—writes

#### Noun Endings: *-er, -ist, -or*


Many names for people's jobs have these endings.

**-er:** driver, photographer, reporter, waiter  
**-ist:** receptionist, scientist, dentist, journalist  
**-or:** actor, director, doctor, translator

### Verb *Want* + Infinitive

- Q:** What do you **want to be**?      **Q:** What does he **want to be**?  
**A:** I **want to be** an engineer.      **A:** He **wants to be** a pilot.

**A.** Complete the sentences with the simple present tense of an appropriate verb. Also fill in the subject pronoun.

 Fadwa is a teacher. She teaches in an elementary school.

- My uncle is a writer. \_\_\_\_\_ history books.
- Omar and Ali are engineers. \_\_\_\_\_ for a construction company.
- Adnan is a bus driver. \_\_\_\_\_ a bus for the city.
- Fahd is a salesperson. \_\_\_\_\_ computers.
- Hameed is a journalist. \_\_\_\_\_ for the city newspaper.



**B.** Write questions for the answers. Use *Wh-* questions.

1. \_\_\_\_\_? Fahad is a waiter.
2. \_\_\_\_\_? He works part-time in a restaurant.
3. \_\_\_\_\_? He lives at home with his parents.
4. \_\_\_\_\_? He wants to be a computer programmer.
5. \_\_\_\_\_? He goes to school during the day.

**C.** Complete the conversations with appropriate verbs in the simple present tense. Then practice with a partner.

1. **A:** What do your uncles \_\_\_\_\_?  
**B:** They're scientists. They \_\_\_\_\_ in a laboratory.  
**A:** That's exciting.
2. **A:** Where does your brother \_\_\_\_\_?  
**B:** He works in a bank. He's a teller, but he \_\_\_\_\_ to be a manager.
3. **A:** My brother \_\_\_\_\_ for the United Nations.  
**B:** Really. What does he do?  
**A:** He's a translator. He \_\_\_\_\_ five languages.



**D.** Choose an adjective for each of these jobs. Use the words in the box or your own ideas. Then compare with a partner. Do you agree or disagree about the jobs?

easy    difficult    boring    exciting    stressful    fun    interesting    satisfying

1. teacher                      3. dentist                      5. worker on an assembly line                      7. waiter
2. flight attendant            4. lawyer                      6. computer programmer                      8. reporter

- A:** I think reporters have an interesting job.  
**B:** Yes, but their job is very stressful. They have a lot of deadlines.

## 4 Listening

Raymond wants to be a lawyer. What does he say? Answer **yes** or **no**.

1. \_\_\_\_ The job is interesting and exciting.
2. \_\_\_\_ A person doesn't need to be smart.
3. \_\_\_\_ The job is stressful.
4. \_\_\_\_ Raymond is a good speaker.
5. \_\_\_\_ He wants to be a lawyer for the money.
6. \_\_\_\_ Raymond's grandfather was a lawyer.

## 5 Pronunciation

Listen to the pronunciation of **want + to**. Then practice.

**I want to** be a pilot.  
**I don't want to** be a doctor.

What do you **want to** be?  
 Do you **want to** be a teacher?



### 3 Who's Who

رابط المدرس الرقمي



www.iem.edu.sa

## 6 Conversation



**Ross:** What does your father do, David?

**David:** My dad's a pilot. He flies those huge airplanes. **You know**, the ones that can carry over five hundred passengers.

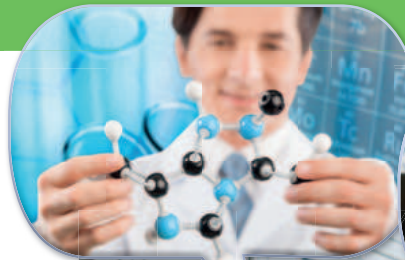
**Ross:** Wow! That's cool.

**David:** **Yeah**. I want to be a pilot just like my dad. What about your father? What does he do?

**Ross:** He's a writer. He writes for a sports magazine.

**David:** Do you want to be a writer, too?

**Ross:** No. I want to be a chemistry teacher. I love doing experiments, and I like teaching kids.



### Your Ending

What is David's response?

- 1 Yeah, teaching is an interesting job.
- 2 Those students can make you proud.
- 3 The good side is that you get lots of vacations.
- 4 Your idea: \_\_\_\_\_

#### Real Talk

**You know...** = an expression used to explain something you just said

**yeah** = yes

### About the Conversation

1. What does David's father do?
2. What does David want to be?
3. What does Ross's dad do?
4. What does Ross want to be? Why?

### Your Turn

Discuss in groups. Where do the members of your family work? What do they do? What do they think about their jobs?

## 7 About You



1. What do you think are interesting jobs? What's interesting about them?
2. What do you think are bad jobs? What's bad about them?
3. What do you want to be in the future? Why?







## 8 Reading

### Before Reading

Look at headings in the text.

- What ideas do you think you will see in the text?
- List some words and phrases about the themes you expect to see in the text.

# Jobs and Employment in Saudi Arabia



### The assets of Saudi Arabia

Saudi Arabia has many assets. We have many advantages – our place, our society, our economy and our people. We will use these to build the best future for our country.

We build and support a culture of determination and achieving goals.

### Employment goals for 2030

Among our goals by 2030: To lower the rate of unemployment from 11.6% to 7%. To increase women's participation in the workforce from 22% to 30%.

### A vision for the future

Our vision is built around three themes: A good society, a strong economy and a determined nation.

### A strong economy

A strong economy needs people to have good jobs and to work hard. We started a 'Job Creation Team' to help people find jobs. We assist new businesses that give people jobs and training. We improve technology and digital systems to support businesses and we give training and advice to people who are looking for jobs. We improved the education system to fit with the jobs that the economy needs.

Half of the people in Saudi Arabia are under the age of 25. This is a huge asset to our country and economy. We support young people in finding jobs they enjoy and that help the economy and society.



\* Adapted from the text of the Vision Programs at <https://vision2030.gov.sa/en> and from the text that was drafted by the Council of Economic and Development Affairs as instructed by the Custodian of the Two Holy Mosques King Salman bin Abdulaziz Al Saud.

### After Reading

- List 3 things that Saudi Arabia does to support the economy.
  - \_\_\_\_\_
  - \_\_\_\_\_
  - \_\_\_\_\_
- What percentage of people in Saudi Arabia are under the age of 25?
- What kind of culture is the country building?
- Name one of Saudi Arabia's employment goals for 2030.

### Discussion

- Is it more important to have a job you enjoy, or a job that pays a lot of money?
- How could you help someone who doesn't have a job?
- What job do you want to do? How will this help the economy and society of Saudi Arabia?



## 9 Writing

A. What do you want to be? Write the job in the chart below. Make a list of good things and bad things about the job. Use your notes to tell a partner about the job and compare ideas. Remember to write key words only when you make notes.

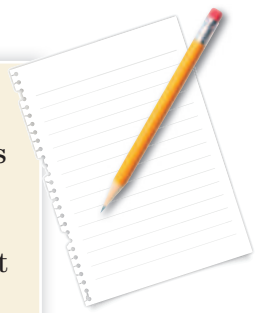
Job: _____	
Good things	Bad things

### Writing Corner

- Use **and** to connect words and ideas which are similar.  
Guy specializes in living room **and** dining room furniture.
- Use **but** to connect contrasting ideas.  
Martin likes working on ships, **but** he doesn't like working every day of the week.
- Use **because** to give a reason for something.  
Martin's job is very exciting **because** he travels all over the world.

B. Read the text. What does this person want to be? Underline the words or phrases that describe the good things about the job. Circle the words or phrases that describe the bad things.

I enjoy asking questions and I love writing stories. I want to be a newspaper journalist. Writing for a newspaper is a good job because it is fun and very exciting. Journalists often need to travel to new places to discover stories. They see a lot of the world and they meet new people every day. The bad side is that this job can be very stressful and difficult because journalists have a lot of deadlines. A person needs to be very smart to be a journalist, but I think it is a very interesting and satisfying job. This job is important for society because it gives people news about what is happening in our country and around the world.



C. Write about your dream job. Write about the good things and the bad things. Use your notes from the chart and words and phrases from this unit. Say why your job does something good for your country. Use the connectors: **and, but, because**.

## 10 Project

Interview three people in different occupations outside of class. Have them explain what they do and say what they like and don't like about their jobs. Report your findings to the class.

# 11 Form, Meaning and Function

## Relative Pronouns: *Who, That, Which*

Relative clauses add information about a noun in the main clause.

Use the relative pronoun *who* or *that* for people.

Use the relative pronoun *that* or *which* for things and animals.


The waiter is serving the customers. He is friendly.

The waiter **who/that** is serving the customers is friendly. (relative clause)

My uncle works in a factory. The factory makes cars.

My uncle works in a factory **that/which makes cars**. (relative clause)

**A.** Write what each person does. Use **who** or **that** and your own ideas.

-  civil engineer A civil engineer is someone who designs roads and bridges.
- nurse \_\_\_\_\_
  - pilot \_\_\_\_\_
  - travel agent \_\_\_\_\_
  - waiter \_\_\_\_\_
  - journalist \_\_\_\_\_
  - graphic designer \_\_\_\_\_
  - translator \_\_\_\_\_
  - lawyer \_\_\_\_\_

**B.** Complete the sentences with **who** or **which**.

- The neighbor \_\_\_\_\_ lives downstairs is a chef.
- Is English a language \_\_\_\_\_ is easy to learn?
- Would you like a job \_\_\_\_\_ has a large salary?
- My brother works in a store \_\_\_\_\_ sells furniture.
- The salesperson \_\_\_\_\_ helped me was very friendly.
- The actor \_\_\_\_\_ is playing the lead role is very funny.
- He works for a construction company \_\_\_\_\_ builds roads and bridges.
- The graphic designer \_\_\_\_\_ made this advertisement is very creative.



**C.** Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

- I like people who are \_\_\_\_\_.
- I don't like people that are \_\_\_\_\_.
- I like books which are \_\_\_\_\_.
- I don't like books that are \_\_\_\_\_.
- I want a job which is \_\_\_\_\_.
- I don't want a job that is \_\_\_\_\_.



# 4 Favorite Pastimes



## 1 Listen and Discuss

Which of the following pastimes are popular in your country?

# Young People's Leisure Preferences

What do youth usually do in their free time? Here are some answers.



They hang out with friends. ▲  
They just meet and talk.



▲ They eat in food courts or restaurants.

They exercise. ▶  
They play sports  
or work out.



▲ They play video  
games or board  
games.



◀ They travel and meet  
people.

They have a hobby. For  
example, they cook, paint,  
▼ read, or make things.



Read the chart of what Saudi youth do online. Do you use the Internet for the same things? What else do you use it for?

### What Saudi Youth Do Online

(Percentage of young Saudi Internet users, ages 15-34)

Participate in social networks or professional networks through social media	94.5%
Play or download games, download films, pictures, or videos	90.7%
Download software and apps	84%
Make telephone calls via the Internet	57.7%
Send and receive emails	57.1%

Sources: Saudi Youth in Numbers: A report for International Youth Day 2020 by the Statistical Analysis and Decision Support Center of the General Authority for Statistics, Kingdom of Saudi Arabia; and Households and Individuals' ICT Access and Usage Survey 2021.

@saudienglish



How often do you play basketball, Ali?



I usually practice three times a week. It's my favorite thing to do in my free time.



What's your favorite pastime, Josh?



I like to play hockey. I know how to ice-skate very well. I usually go to the rink on weekends.



Read the chart of what U.S. teens do online. Compare this chart to the one about young Saudi Internet users on page 26. What are the similarities? What are the differences?

### What U.S. Teens Do Online

(Percentage of U.S. Internet users, ages 12–17)

Send and receive emails	89%
Play online games	81%
Get news or information about current events	76%
Buy things online, such as books, clothing, or gadgets	43%
Look for information on health, diets, or physical fitness	31%

Source: Pew Internet & American Life Project









#### FYI

Teens means *teenagers* (people aged between 13-19). *Young people* and *Youth* refer to much wider age ranges which are often different depending on the country or culture.

### Quick Check ✓

- A. Vocabulary.** Tick (✓) the activities you often do. Compare your answers with a partner.
- B. Comprehension.** Answer **yes** or **no**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Ali often works out.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ Josh knows how to ice-skate.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ Teens seldom buy things online.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ Most teens are not interested in reading about current events.

## 2 Pair Work

- A. Ask** and **answer** about teens' pastimes.
-  Do most teens send emails?
  -  Yes, 89 percent of teens send emails.
  -  How often do teens eat out?
  -  They eat out frequently.
- B. Ask** and **answer** about yourself.
-  What do you do in your free time?
  -  I like to paint. It's very relaxing.
  -  How often do you cook?
  -  I don't know how to cook.

# 4 Favorite Pastimes



## 3 Grammar

### Questions with *How often*?

**How often** do you work out?

### Frequency Expressions: *once a week, etc.*

I work out **every day / once a week / twice a week / three times a week.**

### Adverbs of Frequency: *always, often, never, usually, sometimes, seldom*

**Q:** What does she **usually** do on Thursdays?

**A:** She **usually** goes shopping.

**Q:** What do you **sometimes** do at night?

**A:** I **sometimes** go out.

Adverbs of frequency usually come after the verb *be* or before other verbs.


However, you can say ***Sometimes*** *I go out* or *I **sometimes** go out.*

### Know How To

I **know how to** ski. (= I can ski.)

I **don't know how to** ski. (= I can't ski.)

**A.** Look at the chart of Sabah's activities. Make sentences, and compare with a partner.

 *Sabah always takes a shower in the morning. / She takes a shower every day.*

	Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday
take a shower	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
make the bed						✓	✓
do homework	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
cook dinner		✓		✓			
draw and paint	✓		✓		✓		✓
watch TV					✓		✓
take French classes	✓		✓		✓		

**B.** Ask and answer questions about Sabah.

- How often does she take a shower?
- When does she make her bed?
- What language does she study?
- When does she take these classes?
- How often does she do her homework?
- What hobby does she have?
- How many times a week does she do it?
- What does she never do on the weekend?
- Does she watch TV during the week?
- Does she know how to cook?

**C.** Write about your usual activities. Then compare with your classmates.

Every Day	Three Times a Week	Twice a Week	Once a Week	Never



D. Ask your classmates how they spend their free time.

A: What's your favorite pastime?

B: Text messaging.

A: How often do you do it?

B: I do it all the time.



## 4 Listening

Listen to what Qassim and Fatima like to do in their free time. Answer **yes** or **no**.

### Qassim

1.  He goes indoor climbing every day.
2.  He knows how to climb very well.
3.  Qassim never climbs mountains.

### Fatima

1.  Fatima usually cooks with Noura.
2.  She can cook well.
3.  Fatima's friends think that cooking is a creative hobby.

## 5 Pronunciation

Listen to the reduction of **do + you**. Then practice.

**Do you** exercise?

**Do you** play tennis?

**Do you** know how to cook?

When **do you** exercise?

Where **do you** play?

What **do you** cook?



## 4 Favorite Pastimes

رابط الدرس الرقمي



www.iem.edu.sa

## 6 Conversation

**Jason:** What do you usually do in your free time?

**Rick:** I have an unusual hobby. I fly planes.

**Jason:** That sounds exciting. How often do you do it?

**Rick:** I normally do it on the weekend. I really like to do aerobatics.

**Jason:** *You mean*, you perform stunts and *stuff like that*?

**Rick:** Yeah.

**Jason:** Wow! But isn't it dangerous?

**Rick:** No, not at all. It's really very safe. *You should come along* to the flying club *sometime*.

**Jason:** Sure. I'd love to go up in the air with you.

**Rick:** Up in the air? I fly model airplanes.

**Jason:** Oh, *I see*. That is an unusual hobby.



### Real Talk

**You mean, + statement** = a way to confirm you understand correctly

**stuff like that** = that kind of thing

**You should come along...sometime** = a way to make an invitation

**I see** = I understand

### About the Conversation

1. What's Rick's pastime?
2. How often does he do it?
3. Does he perform stunts?
4. What does he invite Jason to do?
5. What does Jason think Rick's hobby is at first?

### Your Turn

Do a group survey.

1. Ask your classmates about their free-time activities.
2. Which activity comes first on your list?
3. Which activities are the most popular?  
List the activities in order of preference.

## 7 About You

**A.** Talk about your favorite pastime.

1. How often do you do it?
2. Where do you do it?

**B.** Talk about your skills.

**I know how to use a computer.**





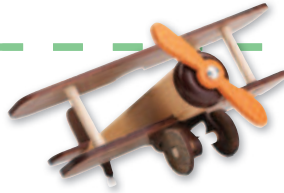


## 8 Reading

### Before Reading

Look at the photos. What do you know about this hobby?

# Sky HIGH!



Aeromodelling is an exciting hobby. It attracts people of all ages. They all have one common interest—the love of flying small-sized airplanes. Most people no longer fly the old elastic-propelled planes. They no longer fly planes that are attached to two cables and that fly in circles around them. Nowadays, with the advances in technology, the big thing is radio-controlled airplanes. These models fly like real aircraft and are an aeromodeller’s ultimate dream. People control the movement of the planes through radio signals. Aeromodels can even perform aerobatics in the sky!

Radio-controlled airplanes come in all shapes and sizes: from the Mini Flyer-plane with a wingspan of 9 inches (23 centimeters), to the huge passenger jet models with a 29 1/2-foot (9-meter) wingspan. The price of the airplanes varies from \$30 to several thousand dollars. There are different methods of propulsion, or ways to power the planes. These range from electric motors to expensive jet turbines.

Jet-powered models are sophisticated aircraft. Their engines sound like those of full-size jet planes. These jet models can travel at speeds of 236 miles (380 kilometers) per hour—that’s more than the top speed of a Formula 1 race car. Jet models always attract large crowds at aeromodelling competitions. At these competitions, fliers usually do a series of actions with their planes, including launchings, landings, and doing maneuvers in the air.

Aeromodelling is a popular hobby all over the world. In the United States, for example, the Academy of Model Aeronautics has more than 170,000 members in 250 model airplane clubs. The organization advertises the great things about aeromodelling as a sport.



### After Reading

Complete the chart with the information on aeromodels from the article.

Kinds of Aeromodels	Sizes	Prices	Kinds of Engines	Speeds
<i>elastic-propelled</i>				



## 9 Writing

A. Write notes in the chart about your hobby or pastime.

What's your hobby?	
What equipment do you need?	
How often / how long do you do it?	
Where do you do it?	
Who do you do it with?	
Why do you like it?	

### Writing Corner

- Use the gerund (-ing form) as a subject or noun.  
**Painting** is a relaxing hobby.      **Playing football** is a lot of fun.
- Use the gerund (-ing form) as an object with the following verbs and phrases: *enjoy, feel like, like, love, prefer, and spend (time)*.  
Do you like **playing** sports? Or do you prefer **watching** TV?  
He spends his free time **working out** at the gym.
- The verbs *like, love, and prefer* can also go with the infinitive.  
She likes **to cook** in her free time.      She prefers **to make** ethnic foods.

B. Read the text about Noura's hobby. Circle the gerund where it is a subject. Underline the gerund where it is an object of the verb.

*Painting is my hobby. I enjoy drawing and painting pictures in my free time. I just need some paper, my paints and brushes, and my imagination. I don't have much free time, so I usually paint on weekends. I often spend two or three hours creating a picture. I paint in my room or in the garden because I like painting flowers and trees. I usually feel like painting alone, but sometimes my friend and I paint together. She's a good artist, and she teaches me things. I love painting because it's a relaxing and creative pastime.*



C. Write about your hobby or pastime. Use your notes from the chart and ideas from this unit.

## 10 Project

Research an unusual hobby or pastime. Present it to the class. The class votes on the most unusual hobby or pastime.



# 11 Form, Meaning and Function

## Gerunds after Verbs

Gerunds are the *-ing* form of a verb. They act like nouns and answer the question *what*.

I recommend **playing** basketball as a hobby.

He enjoys **skateboarding** in the park.

We use gerunds after certain verbs and phrases, such as:

can't stand	feel like	love	spend time
dislike	hate	prefer	suggest
enjoy	like	recommend	



## Infinitives after Verbs

An infinitive is *to* + the base form of a verb. Like gerunds, infinitives act like nouns and answer the question *what*. The verbs *like*, *love*, *hate*, and *prefer* can go with either a gerund or an infinitive.

I like **to watch** TV, but I prefer **to play** games online.

We use infinitives after certain verbs and phrases, such as:

hate	like	prefer	would like
hope	love	want	would love



### A. Write the gerund or infinitive of the verb in parentheses.

My favorite pastime is football. I spend a lot of time \_\_\_\_\_ (1. practice) because I'd like \_\_\_\_\_ (2. be) a professional football player one day. My team trains twice a week, and our coach also recommends \_\_\_\_\_ (3. work out) at the gym twice a week. We usually play matches on the weekends. My teammates and I love \_\_\_\_\_ (4. win), but we can't stand \_\_\_\_\_ (5. lose). We hope \_\_\_\_\_ (6. win) the cup this year.

In my free time, I enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ (7. hang out) with my friends. On Saturdays, we like \_\_\_\_\_ (8. ride) our bikes in the park. When it's raining, we prefer \_\_\_\_\_ (9. go) to the mall. We like \_\_\_\_\_ (10. look) in the stores, and sometimes we want \_\_\_\_\_ (11. buy) things like magazines or clothes. When we don't feel like \_\_\_\_\_ (12. shop), we eat lunch in the food court.

### B. Write about your likes and dislikes. Use gerunds and infinitives.

1. I like \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I'd love \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I enjoy \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I prefer \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I dislike \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I can't stand \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I spend my free time \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I recommend \_\_\_\_\_.



# 5 Is There Any Ice Cream?



## 1 Listen and Discuss

Look at the menu. Which of these foods do you like? Which foods don't you like?

### Sarah's Kitchen Menu

#### Appetizers

Shrimp (grilled or fried)

Soup (bean or vegetable)



#### Salads

Green salad (lettuce)

Mixed salad (tomatoes, carrots, cucumbers, onions)



#### Main Courses

Steak (grilled Argentine style)

Chicken (roasted)

Fish (steamed Japanese style)

Pasta (with tomato or meat sauce)



**All main courses come with baked potato or rice.**

#### Desserts

Apple pie

Cheesecake

Ice cream



#### Beverages

Coffee/Tea (cup)

Chocolate milk (glass)

Fresh fruit juice (glass)

Water (bottle)

Soft drinks





1

**Worker:** May I take your order?  
**Customer:** I'd like the chicken sandwich.  
**Worker:** For here or to go?  
**Customer:** To go, please.



2











**Waiter:** Would you like some dessert?  
**Customer:** Yes, please. Do you have any cheesecake?  
**Waiter:** Sorry, sir. We don't have any today. How about a piece of apple pie?

## Quick Check ✓

- A. Vocabulary.** Put food words on the menu into the following categories:  
**meat, seafood, vegetables, fruits, dessert.**
- B. Comprehension.** Answer about the menu and photos.
1. What's the name of the restaurant on the menu?
  2. Is there any ethnic food on the menu? What?
  3. Do any dishes come with French fries?
  4. What take-out food does the man want?
  5. Does the restaurant have any cheesecake?



## 2 Pair Work

- A. Ask** and **answer** about the menu.
-  Is there any pie?
  -  Yes, there's some apple pie.
  -  Are there any chocolate cookies?
  -  No, there aren't any.
- B. Order food** from the menu.
-  What would you like?
  -  I'd like a salad, please.
  -  And to drink?
  -  Some water, please.
- C. Offer something to eat or drink.**
-  Would you like some coffee?
  -  Yes, please. / No, thank you.

# 5 Is There Any Ice Cream?

رابط الدرس الرقمي



www.ien.edu.sa

## 3 Grammar

### Count/Noncount Nouns

Count nouns name things that you can count: *one carrot, two carrots*, etc. They have singular and plural forms.

#### Singular Count Nouns

a burger  
an egg

#### Plural Count Nouns

two burgers  
three eggs

Noncount nouns name things that you can't count: *rice, tea*. They don't use *a/an*. They don't have plural forms. Some nouns can be count or noncount: *a salad or some salad; a soup or some soup*.

### Expressions of Quantity: *Some / Any*

Use *some* in affirmative statements.

Use *any* in negative statements and in questions.

Use *some/any* with noncount nouns and with plural nouns.

#### Affirmative (+)

There is **some** juice.  
There are **some** fries.

#### Negative (-)

There isn't **any** juice.  
There aren't **any** fries.

#### Questions (?)

Is there **any** juice?  
Are there **any** fries?

Sometimes *some* is used in questions for offers.

Do you want **some** pizza?      How about **some** coffee?

### Would Like

Use *would like* for preferences.

**Q:** What **would** you **like**?

**A:** I'd **like** a steak sandwich.

**Q:** **Would** you **like** some mustard on it?

**A:** Yes, please. / No, thank you.

**FYI**

I'd = I would



### Partitives

We say: a bottle **of** juice, a cup **of** coffee, a glass **of** water, a piece **of** cake.

**A.** Mark the nouns with **C** for count or **N** for noncount.

1. \_\_\_ ice cream
2. \_\_\_ potatoes
3. \_\_\_ eggs
4. \_\_\_ cheese
5. \_\_\_ chocolate
6. \_\_\_ vegetables
7. \_\_\_ sandwiches
8. \_\_\_ juice
9. \_\_\_ tomatoes

**B.** Complete the sentences. Use **a** or **some**.

1. I'd like \_\_\_\_\_ cheese sandwich and \_\_\_\_\_ soft drink.
2. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ French fries with your steak?
3. I want \_\_\_\_\_ burger with \_\_\_\_\_ onions.
4. Can I have \_\_\_\_\_ chicken and \_\_\_\_\_ green salad?
5. I'd like \_\_\_\_\_ piece of cheesecake for dessert.
6. I'd like \_\_\_\_\_ eggs and \_\_\_\_\_ cup of coffee.
7. How about \_\_\_\_\_ turkey sandwiches for lunch?
8. I'm thirsty. May I have \_\_\_\_\_ glass of water?







رابطه الدرس الرقمي  
www.iem.edu.sa



**C.** Complete the conversation. Use **some, any, order,** and **would like**. You can use the words more than once. Then practice with a partner.

**Omar:** Is this Gino's Italian restaurant?

**Tony:** Yes, it is. This is Tony speaking. How can I help you?

**Omar:** I want to (1.) \_\_\_\_\_ some food for delivery.

**Tony:** What (2.) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_?

**Omar:** I'd like (3.) \_\_\_\_\_ minestrone soup and the lasagna bolognese. Do you have (4.) \_\_\_\_\_ apple juice?

**Tony:** Sorry, we don't have (5.) \_\_\_\_\_ juice. Would you like (6.) \_\_\_\_\_ coffee?

**Omar:** Yes, please. Two cups of hot coffee.

**Tony:** Anything else?

**Omar:** Yes. Don't forget to include (7.) \_\_\_\_\_ garlic bread. It's so delicious!



**D.** With a partner, practice ordering a meal that you would like. Use the conversation in exercise **C** as a model.

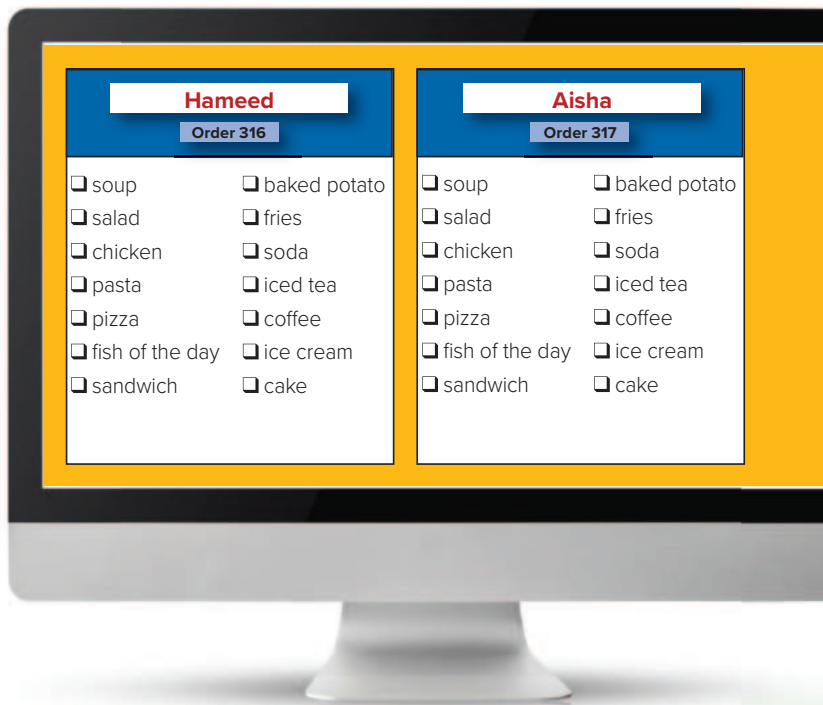
## 4 Listening

Listen and mark what Hameed and Aisha order for lunch.

## 5 Pronunciation

Listen to the pronunciation of the plural endings. Then practice.

/s/	/z/	/əz/
drinks	eggs	juices
desserts	vegetables	sandwiches
cups	fries	dishes





## 5 Is There Any Ice Cream?



## 6 Conversation

- Server:** Are you ready to order?
- Brandon:** Yes, please. I'd like to start with an appetizer. Do you have any calamari?
- Server:** I'm afraid we don't have any, but we have some great grilled shrimp.
- Brandon:** How big are they?
- Server:** Oh, they're giant, sir.
- Brandon:** OK. I'll have them.
- Server:** And what would you like for your main dish?
- Brandon:** Let me see. I'll have the steak. What does it come with?
- Server:** It comes with a baked potato or a salad.
- Brandon:** The salad, please.
- Server:** How do you want your steak?
- Brandon:** Medium rare.
- Server:** Anything to drink?
- Brandon:** Some water. No ice, please.
- ...
- Server:** Here are your shrimp, sir. Enjoy!



### Real Talk

**Let me see.** = I want to think. This is a way to have more time to answer.

**I'll have...** = I want, when ordering food

### Your Ending



What's Brandon's response?

- 1 These are your large shrimp?
- 2 If these are giant shrimp, imagine the small ones!
- 3 How big is my steak?
- 4 Your idea: \_\_\_\_\_

### About the Conversation

1. What does Brandon want as an appetizer?
2. What does he order as a main dish?
3. What does he want with his steak?
4. What would he like to drink?
5. Does he ask for any dessert?

### Your Turn

Role-play ordering food in a restaurant. Order an appetizer, a main dish, and a dessert. Take turns being the server and the customer.

## 7 About You

1. Do you like to eat out?
2. What kind of ethnic restaurants are there in your town?
3. Do you like to try different kinds of foods?
4. What foods do you like best?
5. What are the most popular foods in your country?



## 8 Reading

### Before Reading

What do you know about international foods?  
Discuss in a group.

# Globalization of Foods

International fast-food chains are becoming more and more popular everywhere! You can have burgers, sandwiches, pizza, ice cream, coffee, and soft drinks in restaurants in the Americas, Europe, and Asia. In general, pizza in New York tastes more or less like a pizza in Italy or Hong Kong. However, there are some changes in the food according to the tastes and culture of the different countries. For example, in Japan, you can get a shrimp burger at McDonald's, and in KSA, the McArabia sandwich with chicken or beef is very popular.

Some famous brands had difficulty when they first entered certain countries. For example, in Peru, the most popular soft drink was and still is Inca Kola. Coca Cola couldn't compete against Inca Kola, so they

bought the factory. Now they produce Coca Cola and Inca Kola. In China, people usually drink tea, but coffee is becoming more and more popular. There are about 4,800 Starbucks coffee shops in the country.

In the past, most ethnic foods were just local. Nowadays with globalization, ethnic foods are also becoming popular everywhere. Pizza is originally from Italy, but today there are over 78,000 pizzerias in the U.S., and the number is growing. Asian food is found in food courts everywhere. And one of the most popular Middle Eastern foods around the world is shawarma, which is sometimes also called doner.



### After Reading

1. What are some foods you can have in restaurants all over the world?
2. Is pizza similar in Italy and New York?
3. What is the most popular soft drink in Peru?
4. Is Starbucks successful in China?
5. What is another name for shawarma?

### Discussion

You are going to have dinner in a good restaurant with a group of students in your class. Discuss what to eat.

## 5 Is There Any Ice Cream?

رابطہ المدرس الرقمي



www.ien.edu.sa

### 9 Writing

- A. In groups of three, talk about your favorite foods. Find a dish that everyone in the group likes. Discuss the ingredients and how to prepare the dish.

#### Writing Corner

1. Use sequence words to show the order things happen: *first, next, then, after that, finally*.  
To boil an egg, **first** boil the water in a pot. **Next**, put the egg into the water. **Then**, wait 3-5 minutes. **After that**, remove the egg from the water. **Finally**, serve the egg.
2. Use time words such as *when* and *until*.  
Fry the onion in oil **until** it is golden brown.  
**When** the water boils, put the spaghetti in the pot.

- B. Put the directions for the recipe in the correct order. Number the steps 1–8.

### Cheese and Mushroom Omelet

#### Ingredients:

- 2 large eggs
- salt and pepper
- 3-4 sliced mushrooms
- 1 tablespoon butter
- ¼ cup grated cheese



#### Directions:

- \_\_\_\_\_ Next, pour the eggs into the frying pan with the mushrooms.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Add a little salt and pepper, and mix the eggs with a fork.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Finally, slide the omelet onto a plate.
- \_\_\_\_\_ When the eggs start to cook, sprinkle the cheese on top.
- \_\_\_\_\_ First, break the eggs into a mixing bowl.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Melt the butter, and fry the mushrooms until golden brown.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Then, fold the omelet in half.
- \_\_\_\_\_ After that, put the butter in a frying pan.

- C. Write a recipe for a dish that you know how to make. Make a list of ingredients. Use the imperative to write the directions. Use sequence words and time words such as: **first, next, then, after that, finally, when** and **until**.

### 10 Project

Make a typical menu from your country. Include food for breakfast, lunch, and dinner.



# 11 Form, Meaning and Function

## Too and Enough

Too can be placed before adjectives.

I don't like the soup. It's **too salty**.

Too much can be placed before noncount nouns and too many before count nouns.

I don't like the soup. There's **too much salt** in it.

I don't like the soup. There are **too many carrots** in it.

Enough can be placed after adjectives.

Don't add more salt. The soup is **salty enough**.

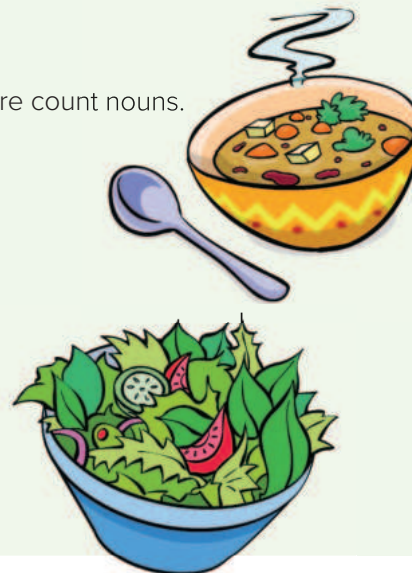
Enough can be placed before count and noncount nouns.

We have **enough eggs**, but we don't have **enough sugar**.

A phrase with too or enough can be followed by an infinitive phrase.

The soup is **too hot to eat**.

I have **enough vegetables to make a salad**.



### A. Complete the sentences with **too** or **enough**.

1. I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ time to cook dinner.
2. This restaurant is \_\_\_\_\_ crowded. Let's eat somewhere else.
3. There were \_\_\_\_\_ many sandwiches, but not \_\_\_\_\_ salad.
4. No more, thank you. That's \_\_\_\_\_ rice for me.
5. It's \_\_\_\_\_ hot in here. Can we turn on the air conditioner?
6. These shoes are \_\_\_\_\_ big, and those shoes aren't big \_\_\_\_\_.

### B. Complete the sentences with **too much**, **too many**, or **not enough**.

1. There are \_\_\_\_\_ people in this restaurant. We can't find a table.
2. There are \_\_\_\_\_ desserts to choose from. I want to try them all!
3. \_\_\_\_\_ sugar and \_\_\_\_\_ sweets aren't good for you.
4. I can't eat all this. There's \_\_\_\_\_ pasta on my plate.
5. I have \_\_\_\_\_ work to do and \_\_\_\_\_ free time to relax.
6. He's still hungry. There was \_\_\_\_\_ food.

### C. Complete the sentences with an infinitive phrase.

1. It's too late \_\_\_\_\_.
2. There isn't enough time \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Do we have enough eggs \_\_\_\_\_?
4. He's too young \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I'm too tired \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Are you too busy \_\_\_\_\_?





# EXPANSION Units 1–5

## 1 Language Review



A. Write what the people in the jobs do.

🔦 A teacher teaches.

- |                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. A driver _____.     | 5. A student _____.     |
| 2. A translator _____. | 6. A salesperson _____. |
| 3. A manager _____.    | 7. A reporter _____.    |
| 4. A writer _____.     | 8. A nurse _____.       |

B. Rewrite the sentences. Change **can** or **can't** to **know how to** or **don't know how to**.

🔦 I can swim very well. I know how to swim very well.

🔦 I can't swim at all. I don't know how to swim at all.

- |  |       |
|--|-------|
| 1. I can speak Spanish.                  | _____ |
| 2. That student can't type.              | _____ |
| 3. Refaa can make her own clothes.       | _____ |
| 4. Farah can cook delicious Indian food. | _____ |
| 5. Most of my friends can't play chess.  | _____ |

C. Look at the picture, and answer the questions.



🔦 Is the police officer wearing jeans? No, he isn't. He's wearing a uniform.

- |   |       |
|---|-------|
| 1. Is the young man buying a burger?    | _____ |
| 2. Are the man and woman taking a bus?  | _____ |
| 3. Is the boy riding a bike?            | _____ |
| 4. Is the tourist reading a book?       | _____ |
| 5. Is the businessman sending an email? | _____ |

D. Complete the conversation. Then practice with a partner.

**Fahd:** What \_\_\_\_\_ (1. be) your favorite pastime?

**Tom:** Board games, I guess. I \_\_\_\_\_ (2. have) lots of them. But Scrabble is my favorite.  
\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (3. know) how to \_\_\_\_\_ (4. play) it?

**Fahd:** No, I don't.

**Tom:** Well, it \_\_\_\_\_ (5. be) easy. I can \_\_\_\_\_ (6. teach) you some time.

**Fahd:** I \_\_\_\_\_ (7. prefer) something up-to-date, like video games. I think video games \_\_\_\_\_ (8. be) good for your mental health, and they \_\_\_\_\_ (9. be) a good way to get rid of stress.

**Tom:** Yeah, but some people \_\_\_\_\_ (10. become) addicted to video games. They \_\_\_\_\_ (11. play) for many hours at one time.

**Fahd:** Well, I \_\_\_\_\_ (12. know) people that play Scrabble for an entire afternoon. Sometimes my friend Mike \_\_\_\_\_ (13. start) a game with friends after lunch, and he \_\_\_\_\_ (14. not finish) until dinner time.



E. Make questions for the answers.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
That's Adnan. He's our neighbor.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
My brother's a computer programmer.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
Maha wakes up early every day.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
I usually study in the evening, after school.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
No, I can't cook. But I know some really good restaurants.



F. Complete the conversations.

1. **A:** Why don't you have \_\_\_\_\_ chicken?

**B:** No, thank you. I \_\_\_\_\_ eat meat. I'm a vegetarian.

2. **A:** How about \_\_\_\_\_ seafood? The shrimp here are very nice.

**B:** I can't eat \_\_\_\_\_ seafood. I get red spots on my body \_\_\_\_\_ I eat shrimp.

3. **A:** \_\_\_\_\_ you like some dessert?

**B:** Yes, good idea. Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ fruit?

**A:** No, we don't have \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ about a piece of chocolate cake?

**B:** I'm on a diet. I'm trying to \_\_\_\_\_ weight.



## 2 Reading

### Before Reading

Look at the photos.  
What do you think is happening?



# LET THE GAMES BEGIN

*Ask teenagers around the world how they love to spend their free time, and chances are they'll say video games. But no country can compare to South Korea for love of video games!*

You walk around the COEX mall in Seoul on the weekend, and you look around. Teenagers are hanging out, people are shopping, families are eating in food courts, children are having fun... It's just like any other mall. And then you hear screams that are coming from the end of a corridor in the huge building. You walk in, and what do you see? Hundreds of young people are waving signs and chanting slogans. They are the fans of some of the nation's most famous sports stars, such as Lim-Yo-Hwan, Choi Yeon-Sung, and Suh-Ji-Houn. Their sport is something you don't normally find in the West. They are professional video gamers. People admire them for their skill in the science-fiction strategy game *StarCraft*. Next to these players is a panel of commentators and dozens of reporters. The players are not competing today. They are here for selection for a coming tournament.



There are two full-time video game television networks in Korea, and competitive gaming is one of the top televised sports. Thousands of fans attend the *StarCraft* tournament finals in stadiums.

But public video game areas aren't just for top players. South Korea has more than 20,000 public PC gaming rooms, or "bangs," which attract more than a million people a day. Video games are exciting and offer some real opportunities to solve problems and use strategic and critical thinking skills. Some parents actually encourage their children to play such video games as a way to relax, as an escape from academic pressure, and as a fun way to use brainpower.







## After Reading

A. Match the words with the meanings.

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| 1. ____ screams    | a. to tell someone it's a good idea to do something |
| 2. ____ tournament | b. group of TV stations                             |
| 3. ____ network    | c. stress   |
| 4. ____ encourage  | d. shouting   |
| 5. ____ pressure   | e. competition among a group of people              |

B. Answer the questions about the article.

1. What are people doing in the mall on the weekend?
2. What can you hear in a part of the mall?
3. What are the fans doing?
4. Who are the sports stars?
5. What sport do they play?
6. Are they playing today?
7. Where are the tournament finals?
8. What is a "bang"?
9. What do some parents in South Korea think about video games?

## Discussion

1. Discuss the good and bad things about video games.
2. Do you think video games are good or bad? Explain why.

## Writing

Write about your favorite game. Answer one or more of these questions:

1. How do you play it? What are the rules?
2. What do you like about it?
3. How often do you play it? Are you good at the game?
4. What special skills do you need to play the game?





## 3 Reading

### Before Reading

Look at the name of the food in the title of each section. What do you know about each food? Is it healthful or not?

# Foods: TRUTHS AND LIES

Every day, new discoveries about food help change ideas that people had about certain items. Some food villains of the past are perfectly acceptable in today's diets.



#### Margarine

Margarine was introduced officially in the United States in 1950 as a substitute for butter. However, margarine contained trans fats,\* which were worse than the saturated fat in butter. Nowadays, makers of margarine take out trans fats, and some brands include ingredients that help to protect the heart.



#### Eggs

Eggs can be a problem for people with high cholesterol, especially if the eggs are fried. For healthy people, eggs are a good source of protein and are good for the heart and brain. However, you shouldn't eat a lot of eggs.



#### Chocolate

People long associated chocolate with obesity, high cholesterol, and acne, because it contains sugar and saturated fats. Recent studies show that dark chocolate protects the heart, because it reduces the bad cholesterol and helps to lower blood pressure. Some nutritionists recommend one square from a bar a day.



#### Sandwiches

People said: "A sandwich isn't a substitute for a good meal." But some sandwiches can be a good healthy choice. One example is turkey or smoked salmon, with cheese, tomato, avocado, and lettuce on whole wheat bread, especially if you have the sandwich together with a glass of fresh orange juice.



#### Oils

Oils often have saturated fat, and generally they aren't good for you. However, olive oil is an exception. Olive oil increases the "good" cholesterol and helps to eliminate the "bad" cholesterol. In ancient times, people used olive oil as medicine.



#### Milk

Milk and other dairy products such as cheese and yogurt are considered the perfect foods for young and old. They provide the body with necessary calcium. Unfortunately, a large portion of the world's population cannot drink milk because they cannot tolerate the lactose in cow's milk. They need to find calcium in other sources.

\*Trans fats result when liquid oils are made into solid fats. They are like saturated fat and raise the "bad" cholesterol level. Trans fats can be found in cookies, snacks, margarine, and other processed foods.

## After Reading

1. What was the problem with eating margarine?
2. Why are eggs good for you?
3. How does chocolate help protect the heart?
4. How much chocolate should you eat a day?
5. Why is olive oil good for you?
6. Why can't many people drink milk?

## Discussion

1. What is your opinion about the foods mentioned in the text?
2. What is your favorite food or drink?
3. Are young people in your country worried about eating healthy?
4. What do young people usually eat?
5. Is fast food popular in your country?
6. What do you think are the good and bad things about fast food?



## 4 Writing

Write about a food that you think is good or bad for your health.  
Defend your point of view.

## 5 Project

Research healthful diets.  
Which foods are considered  
healthful and unhealthy  
for young people?



6 Chant Along

# Just Another Day



I wake up in the morning,  
And I crawl out of bed.  
I don't feel like movin'—  
Got a whole day ahead.  
I grab a cup of coffee  
And make myself a bite.  
My head is aching—  
Didn't sleep all night.



**Chorus**

It's just another working day.  
Nothing in this job to look forward to.  
I want to get away—  
Get away from this strife  
I got to do something,  
Something good with my life.



The boss calls me in:  
"You're not doing your share.  
You don't fit in,  
And you don't seem to care.  
Get your act together.  
I've had enough.  
Just one more chance  
Or you'll be laid off."

**Chorus**

It's six o'clock,  
And it's time to go home—  
Shut the laptop down  
And hang up the phone.  
I rush to the station  
And stand on the train.  
Tomorrow at eight  
I'll be back again.



**Chorus**



## Vocabulary

A. Match the words with the meanings.

- |                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1. ____ grab            | a. a part that rightly belongs to a person           |
| 2. ____ ache            | b. difficulty  |
| 3. ____ look forward to | c. hurry   |
| 4. ____ strife          | d. feel a pain                                       |
| 5. ____ share           | e. take into your hand quickly and firmly            |
| 6. ____ rush            | f. think about something in the future with pleasure |

B. Circle the correct meaning of each expression.

- |                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| 1. crawl out of bed      | (get up slowly / walk on your hands and knees)              |
| 2. make myself a bite    | (bite yourself / make a snack for yourself)                 |
| 3. you don't fit in      | (your clothes don't fit / you aren't part of the team)      |
| 4. get your act together | (wear more formal clothes / do a better job)                |
| 5. you'll be laid off    | (you'll lose your job / you'll be moved to a different job) |

## Comprehension

Answer the questions.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. How does the man feel in the morning? | 5. What does his boss complain about?     |
| 2. Is he looking forward to his day?     | 6. What time does he finish work?         |
| 3. Does he eat breakfast?                | 7. What kind of day does he usually have? |
| 4. Why is his head aching?               | 8. What does he want to do with his life? |

## Discussion

1. Why do you think the man didn't sleep all night?
2. Why does the man want to change his job?
3. Do you think it's a good idea for the man to change jobs? Why or why not?

## 7 Writing

In your own words, write about a typical day in the life of the man from the chant.

## 8 Project

Think about what you do every day. Write two or three verses like the chant about a typical day in your life. Include a chorus.





# 6 What Was It Like?

رابط الدرس الرقمي



www.iien.edu.sa

## 1 Listen and Discuss

Here is a list of museum exhibits in a city. Which ones interest you? Why?

### THE “WHAT’S ON?” MUSEUM GUIDE

Pick the dates you would like to see the exhibit.  
Search for tickets by date range (MM-DD-YYYY).

- About Us
- Exhibits
- Galleries
- Museums
- Sights
- Tours

#### MUSEUM OF CONTEMPORARY ART

##### THE WORLD OF MIRÓ

Temporary exhibit of works by the Spanish artist

May 3 – July 29  
10 A.M. – 6 P.M.  
Closed Saturdays  
Tickets: \$5  
Students free

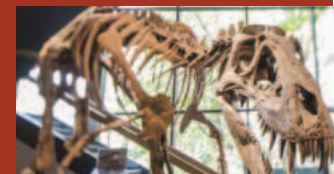


#### MUSEUM OF NATURAL HISTORY

##### THE JURASSIC EXPERIENCE

JOURNEY THROUGH TIME AND  
COME FACE-TO-FACE WITH A GIANT  
TYRANNOSAURUS REX

Hours  
Open daily  
10 A.M. – 5 P.M.  
Admission  
\$6, \$8, \$11



#### ISLAMIC HERITAGE MUSEUM

##### ART OF THE PEN: ARABIC CALLIGRAPHY

Admire the beautiful art of Arabic calligraphy  
and Holy Qur’anic verse

June 1 – August 15  
Hours:  
9 A.M. – 6 P.M.  
Closed Sundays  
Special discount  
for school groups



#### MUSEUM OF SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

##### THE SKY’S NOT THE LIMIT

Discover technology: past — present — future  
Go on a safari through space

Museum  
9 A.M. to 7 P.M.  
Planetarium shows  
6 P.M. and 7 P.M.  
Schools only  
11 A.M.



What did you do on the weekend?

I went to the Science Museum.

What was it like?

It was amazing!

## OLD AND NEW TECHNOLOGY



### NAVIGATION

Learn how navigators traveled the oceans



### TRANSPORTATION

Visit our vintage car and plane collection



### AERONAUTICS

See an original space shuttle



### ELECTRICITY

Discover how electric currents work



### ROBOTICS

Shake hands with a moving robot



### PLANETARIUM

Explore space with astronauts





## Quick Check ✓





- A. Vocabulary.** Mark the exhibits that have student discounts.
- B. Comprehension.** Answer the questions about the museums.
1. Where can you see dinosaurs?
  2. Where can you learn about calligraphy?
  3. Where did one of the boys go on the weekend?
  4. What was the Science Museum like?

## 2 Pair Work

- A. Ask** and **answer**.

-  What kind of museum do you prefer?
-  I like history museums best.

- B. Ask** and **answer** about recent events you attended.

-  What did you do last Saturday?
-  I went to the Sports Museum.
-  How was it?
-  It was interesting. I really liked the football exhibit.



# 6 What Was It Like?



## 3 Grammar

### Simple Past Tense: *be*

I  
He | **was** | at home.  
She

We  
You | **were** | at home.  
They

#### Information Questions (?)

How **was** the museum tour?  
How **was** the guide?  
What **were** the exhibits like?

#### Yes-No Questions (?)

**Was** the game exciting?  
**Were** the players good?

#### Affirmative (+)

It **was** good.  
He/She **was** great.  
They **were** very good.

#### Short Answers (+)

Yes, it **was**.  
Yes, they **were**.

#### Negative (-)

It **wasn't** good.  
He/She **wasn't** great.  
They **weren't** very good.

#### Short Answers (-)

No, it **wasn't**.  
No, they **weren't**.

### Simple Past Tense: Regular and Irregular Verbs

#### Information Questions (?)

What **did** you **do** last weekend?  
Where **did** they **go** on Thursday?

#### Yes-No Questions (?)

**Did** you/he/they **like** the museum?

#### Affirmative (+)

I **stayed** home.  
They **went** to the beach.

#### Short Answers (+)

Yes, I/he/they **did**.

#### Negative (-)

I **didn't stay** home.  
They **didn't go** to the beach.

#### Short Answers (-)

No, I/he/they **didn't**.

Regular past tense verbs end in *-ed* in the affirmative. Most English verbs are regular.

#### Irregular Past Forms

buy— <b>bought</b>	eat— <b>ate</b>	go— <b>went</b>	meet— <b>met</b>	swim— <b>swam</b>
come— <b>came</b>	feel— <b>felt</b>	have— <b>had</b>	ride— <b>rode</b>	take— <b>took</b>
do— <b>did</b>	fly— <b>flew</b>	know— <b>knew</b>	see— <b>saw</b>	win— <b>won</b>
drink— <b>drank</b>	get— <b>got</b>	leave— <b>left</b>	sleep— <b>slept</b>	write— <b>wrote</b>
drive— <b>drove</b>	give— <b>gave</b>	make— <b>made</b>	spend— <b>spent</b>	

**Note:** See the list of irregular verbs on page 180.

**A.** Complete the conversations. Use the past tense of **be**. Then practice with a partner.

- A:** Where \_\_\_\_\_ the football game?  
**B:** It \_\_\_\_\_ at King Fahd Stadium.  
**A:** Which team won?  
**B:** Saudi Arabia. They really \_\_\_\_\_ much better.
- A:** Where \_\_\_\_\_ you on Thursday night?  
**B:** I \_\_\_\_\_ at a restaurant.  
**A:** What \_\_\_\_\_ the food like?  
**B:** It \_\_\_\_\_ Indian. It \_\_\_\_\_ delicious.

- A:** How \_\_\_\_\_ the exhibit?  
**B:** It \_\_\_\_\_ very interesting. But the lines to get in \_\_\_\_\_ very long.



@saudienglish





**B.** Complete the conversation. Use the past tense of the verbs in parentheses. Then practice with a partner.

**Fahd:** What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (1. do) yesterday?

**Imad:** I \_\_\_\_\_ (2. watch) the football game between the KSA and Belgium from 1994.

**Fahd:** \_\_\_\_\_ (3. be) there many people in the stadium that day?

**Imad:** Yes. It \_\_\_\_\_ (4. be) very crowded.

**Fahd:** \_\_\_\_\_ Saudi Arabia \_\_\_\_\_ (5. play) well?

**Imad:** Yes, the team \_\_\_\_\_ (6. play) a fantastic game.

**Fahd:** \_\_\_\_\_ they \_\_\_\_\_ (7. win) the game?

**Imad:** Yes. They \_\_\_\_\_ (8. win) by one goal!

**C.** Complete the paragraph. Use the past tense of the verbs in parentheses.

Last night the first episode of the series *Back to the Past* \_\_\_\_\_ (1. be) on Channel 5. It's an interesting science fiction series about a scientist, Professor Sparks, and his fantastic time machine. He \_\_\_\_\_ (2. want) to travel to the future, but something \_\_\_\_\_ (3. happen), and he \_\_\_\_\_ (4. go) back to the age of the dinosaurs. At first, the professor \_\_\_\_\_ (5. be) very excited. It \_\_\_\_\_ (6. be) an opportunity for him to study the Jurassic Period. Then Sparks \_\_\_\_\_ (7. see) that he \_\_\_\_\_ (8. not have) any food. He \_\_\_\_\_ (9. not know) how to hunt, to fish, or to make a fire.

But he \_\_\_\_\_ (10. have) a Swiss Army knife, a box of matches, and... his brains. What \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ (11. do)? What do you think?

## 4 Listening

Listen to the radio reviews. Are they good (+) or bad (-)? Mark the correct column.

Did the reporter like...	Good (+)	Bad (-)
1. the football game?		
2. the restaurant?		
3. the modern art exhibit?		
4. the new shopping mall?		

## 5 Pronunciation

Listen to the pronunciation of the past tense endings. Then practice.

/t/	/d/	/ɪd/
liked	played	visited
missed	happened	needed
watched	jogged	invited

# 6 What Was It Like?



## 6 Conversation

- Majid:** Where were you last night? I called you several times and left messages on your voice mail.
- Walid:** I was at home studying, and my cell phone was turned off.
- Majid:** **That's too bad.** I had invitations for the opening of *Vesuvius*, the new Italian pizzeria.
- Walid:** **You did?** Oh, I heard about it. What was it like?
- Majid:** Fantastic! The place is really awesome. It was like the inside of a volcano. The walls and the floor were red, and the lights made them look like they were red hot lava. The service was great. There were over 25 pizzas on the menu, and the Red Hot Volcano special was **out of this world!**
- Walid:** I'm so sorry I missed it. Maybe we can go next weekend.
- Majid:** Yeah, you can invite me anytime!



### Real Talk

- That's too bad.** = an expression to show you're sorry about what the speaker said
- You did?** = a short question, used here to express surprise
- out of this world** = an expression used to say that something is very good

### About the Conversation

1. Where was Walid?
2. Why didn't he get Majid's messages?
3. Why did Majid call him?
4. What was the restaurant like?
5. What was the service like?
6. Does Majid want to go back?

### Your Turn

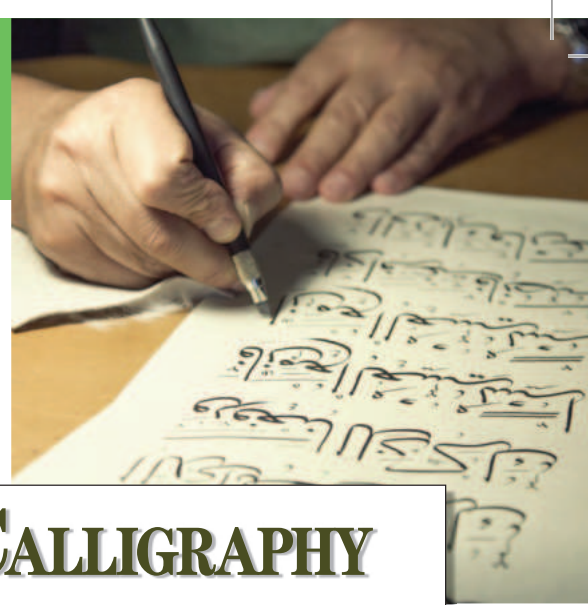
Find out from your classmates what they did on the weekend.

Find someone who...	Name
stayed at home	
studied a lot	
cooked a meal	
played a sport	
went to a museum	
went to the mall	

## 7 About You

1. Did you ever go to an interesting museum? What was it like?
2. Did you ever go to a sports game? What was it like?
3. Did you ever see an interesting film on TV? What was it about?
4. Did you ever eat at a nice restaurant? What was it like?
5. What events are going on in your town this weekend?





## 8 Reading

### Before Reading

What do you know about calligraphy? Can you write calligraphy?

# ART OF THE PEN: ARABIC CALLIGRAPHY



This summer, the Islamic Heritage Museum is proud to present a special exhibit called *Art of the Pen: Arabic Calligraphy*. Admire the beautiful art of Arabic calligraphy and Holy Qur'anic verse. Learn about the history of calligraphy and its development.

### Calligraphy and the Holy Qur'an

The word *calligraphy* means "beautiful writing." Arabic calligraphy has beautiful lines and shapes. But the true beauty of calligraphy is that it is used to write the holy words of the Qur'an. That is how and why the art of Arabic calligraphy started.

The first Arabic system of writing (script) was very simple. Then, with the spread of Islam, there was a need for a more expressive form of writing to communicate Allah's words in the Holy Qur'an.

It was important to have a clear script that all the people of Islam could easily read and understand.

### Styles

Today, there are six main styles of Arabic calligraphy. One of the oldest styles is *Kufic* script. It has straight, geometric letters that make it easy to cut into wood or stone. This is the script calligraphers used to write the first copies of the Holy Qur'an.

The other main styles are cursive and have connecting letters. *Thuluth* is a long and elegant script that is often used to write the headings of *surahs*, Holy Qur'anic chapters. It is also the script of the Saudi Arabian flag. *Naskh* and *Ruq'ah* are popular scripts that are common in printing and handwriting. They are generally smaller and easier to read and write. *Farsi* or *Ta'liq*, which means "hanging," is an old script that is sometimes used in literature. *Diwani* is a very decorative style that is often seen on greeting cards.



### After Reading

1. What is so beautiful about calligraphy?
2. Why did the Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him, need a clear system of writing?
3. How is *Kufic* script different from cursive scripts?
4. Where can you see examples of *Thuluth* script?

### Discussion

Do you know about historic examples of calligraphy? Tell about them.





## 6 What Was It Like?



### 9 Writing

- A. Think about a museum, performance, or sports event that you attended. Try to remember as many sensory details as you can. Write notes in the chart.

Sights	Sounds	Smells/Tastes	Touch/Feelings

#### Writing Corner

1. A narrative story usually describes the events in the order that they happened. It describes what the writer feels and senses, so the reader can imagine being there.
2. Use time words to show sequence: *when, as, while, before, and after*. If a time word begins the sentence, there is a comma after the time clause.
3. An exclamation point (!) shows strong feelings, like the writer is shouting.
4. Use quotation marks (“ ”) around the exact words that a person says.

- B. Read about Faisal’s experience at a horse race. Learn the meaning of the words in the box. Then, complete the paragraph with the words.

nervous   crowd   thundered   shook   silent   paraded   excited   cheered

Last month, I went to a horse race for the first time. Before the race, my father and I walked by the stables to see the horses. While the jockeys (1) \_\_\_\_\_ past us, one of the horses jumped up on its back legs. The horse, named Prince, was very (2) \_\_\_\_\_, but the jockey looked confident. I said to my father, “That’s the winner!” Then we pushed through the noisy (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to find a place near the track. The horses were ready to start, and suddenly the crowd was (4) \_\_\_\_\_. “They’re off,” shouted the announcer. The horses (5) \_\_\_\_\_ past us, and it felt like the ground (6) \_\_\_\_\_. They disappeared around the track, so I looked in my binoculars. Prince was in front by a neck! I started to jump because I was so (7) \_\_\_\_\_. As they crossed the finish line, the crowd (8) \_\_\_\_\_. Prince was the winner by two lengths!



- C. Write about an interesting museum, performance, or sports event that you attended. Use your notes from the chart to describe what you sensed and how you felt.

### 10 Project

Check on the events in your town. Choose one, and make a brochure about it. Present your brochure to the class.

# 11 Form, Meaning and Function

## Intensifiers

We use adverbs like *very*, *quite*, *really*, *pretty*, and *extremely* to make adjectives stronger. These adverbs are normally placed before the adjective.

It's a **very** interesting exhibit.      Everyone was **pretty** excited.  
It's a **really** interesting exhibit.      Everyone was **extremely** excited.  
It's **quite** an interesting exhibit.      Everyone was **quite** excited.

**Note:** When there is a singular noun, *quite* goes before the article.

## Intensifiers with Strong Adjectives

Strong adjectives are words like:

enormous; huge = very big	tiny = very small
brilliant = very clever	certain = very sure
excellent; wonderful; great = very good	awful; terrible = very bad
fantastic; amazing; awesome = very good	delicious = very tasty

We do not use *very* with strong adjectives. We can use adverbs like *absolutely*, *completely*, *totally*, *really*, *pretty*, and *quite*.

The cake is very tasty.      The cake is **absolutely** *delicious*.  
Are you really sure?      Are you **totally/quite** *certain*?



**A.** Circle the correct word(s). In some cases, both words are correct.

The new pizzeria is (1. extremely / completely) popular. It's a (2. really / very) great place to spend the evening with friends. The decoration is (3. pretty / completely) awesome. The walls and the floor are (4. totally / quite) red, and the lights make it look like you're inside a volcano. The waiters are (5. absolutely / extremely) friendly, and the service is (6. very / quite) fast. There's a (7. quite / really) huge selection of pizzas on the menu, and the prices are (8. very / quite) reasonable. The Red Hot special is (9. absolutely / totally) delicious. So, invite your friends. It's (10. absolutely / very) fantastic!

**B.** Rewrite the sentences with different intensifiers and adjectives.

1. The exhibit was very good. We had a really good time.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. The exhibit was very bad. We had a very bad time.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. The food was very bad, and the service was very bad.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. The pizza was very good, and the service was very good.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. That's a very good idea. It's very clever.

\_\_\_\_\_



# 7 What Happened?

رابط الدرس الرقمي



www.ien.edu.sa

## 1 Listen and Discuss

1. Look at the photos. What do you think happened?
2. What causes traffic accidents in your country?

# The Scene of the Accident

The accident happened 10 minutes ago.



### Witness 1 ▶

I'm relieved that no one was hurt.



### SUV driver ▶

I was sleepy, and I didn't see the car coming.



### ▲ Witness 2

The car driver was on his cell phone. He didn't see the stop sign.

### ▲ Car driver

I saw nothing. I'm really worried because I don't have any car insurance.

### ▶ Passenger

I'm always nervous when I ride with him.



### ◀ Police officer

I'm not surprised. This is the third accident here this week. Someone needs to put a traffic light at this intersection.

**Case Number:** ACC 05/04/12/3462  
**Incident:** Motor Vehicle Accident  
**Reporting Officer:** Officer James Smith



### Police Report

There was another accident at the corner of Lake and Willow. The accident happened around 3:15 P.M. An SUV crashed into a car. Fortunately, there were no injuries.

It was the car driver's fault because he didn't stop at the stop sign. He was talking on his cell phone.

@saudienglish





Why are you so happy?

# Feelings

Because I just got my driver's license.



happy



sad



tired



sleepy



angry



worried



nervous



scared

## Quick Check

**A. Vocabulary.** Match the words with the meaning.

- |                     |                                     |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. ___ witness      | a. hurt from an accident            |
| 2. ___ insurance    | b. where two roads cross            |
| 3. ___ intersection | c. payment for costs of an accident |
| 4. ___ injury       | d. someone who saw an event         |

**B. Comprehension.** Answer the questions. Use the information from the police officer and in the police report.

- When did the accident happen?
- Did the car stop at the stop sign?
- Were there any injuries?
- Was it the SUV driver's fault?
- How many accidents happened at this corner this week?

## 2 Pair Work

**A. Ask and answer** about the accident.

- Why was the witness relieved?
- Because no one was hurt.
- What happened?
- An SUV hit a car.

**B. Ask and answer** about yourself.

- When were you last worried?
- About a month ago. I lost my cell phone.

# 7 What Happened?



www.ien.edu.sa

## 3 Grammar

### There Was / There Were

#### Singular

**There was** an accident. (+)  
**There wasn't** a traffic light. (-)

#### Plural

**There were** three accidents this week. (+)  
**There weren't** many cars in the street. (-)

### Why / Because

**Q: Why** are you worried?  
**A: Because** I have a test tomorrow.

**Q: Why** did the driver start to shout?  
**A: Because** he was angry.

### Adverb: Ago

They saw Ahmed in his office 10 minutes **ago**.

### Pronouns: Someone, No One, Nothing, Anything

**Someone** helped the driver get out of the car. Did you hear **anything**?  
Fortunately, **no one** was hurt in the accident. I didn't hear **anything**. I was asleep.  
And **nothing** was wrong with the car.

- A.** Work with a partner. Ask and answer.
- A:** Why are the fans happy?  
**B:** Because their team won the game.



fans / happy



1. boys / worried



2. Nawal / angry



3. parents / sad



4. officer / surprised





B. Complete the report. Use the past tense of the verbs in parentheses.

**PD** Witness Report

I \_\_\_\_\_ (1. be) across the road, and I \_\_\_\_\_ (2. see) what happened. The young man in the car \_\_\_\_\_ (3. not see) that \_\_\_\_\_ (4. there be) a stop sign on the corner because he was on his cell phone. He was surprised when the truck \_\_\_\_\_ (5. hit) him. His car \_\_\_\_\_ (6. crash) into a newsstand. Fortunately, \_\_\_\_\_ (7. there not be) many people in the street at the time. Mr. Raffi, the owner of the newsstand, was nervous and upset, but he \_\_\_\_\_ (8. not be) hurt. Two weeks ago, \_\_\_\_\_ (9. there be) another accident in the same place between a motorcycle and a taxi.

Signature: *Ryan McNeal*

C. Write your answers. Use **ago**. Then share answers with a partner.

- 💡 When did you last read a good book? *I last read a good book two weeks ago on vacation.*
- When did you last see a good exhibit? \_\_\_\_\_
  - When did you first use a computer? \_\_\_\_\_
  - When did you last eat a delicious meal? \_\_\_\_\_
  - When did you last go shopping? \_\_\_\_\_

D. Complete the sentences. Use **someone, no one, nothing,** or **anything**.

- I was there, but I didn't see \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ can say that I didn't try. I worked hard.
- Can \_\_\_\_\_ please help me?!
- Why are you angry? I did \_\_\_\_\_ wrong.
- I'm surprised \_\_\_\_\_ heard the loud crash.
- The children are bored because there's \_\_\_\_\_ to do here.

## 4 Listening

Answer **yes** or **no** about the accident.

**Harry Skinner**

- \_\_\_\_\_ The light was green for the truck.
- \_\_\_\_\_ The truck hit the bus.
- \_\_\_\_\_ No one was injured.
- \_\_\_\_\_ In the end, everyone was OK.

**Jill Black**

- \_\_\_\_\_ The light was green for the truck.
- \_\_\_\_\_ The truck hit the bus.
- \_\_\_\_\_ No one was injured.
- \_\_\_\_\_ In the end, Jill is worried.

## 5 Pronunciation

Listen to the **h** sound. Then practice.

- I'm **h**appy for you.  
Are you **h**urt?  
Is **h**e hungry?



## 7 What Happened?



### 6 Conversation

- Daughter:** Mom, can I talk to you?  
**Mother:** I'm busy right now.  
**Daughter:** *It'll only take a minute.*  
**Mother:** OK. *What's up?*  
**Daughter:** Well, I have some good news and some bad news. Which one do you want to hear first?  
**Mother:** Give me the good news.  
**Daughter:** I got an A on my history report.  
**Mother:** That's great. And what's the bad news?  
**Daughter:** Now don't be angry, Mom. *Don't lose your cool*, please. *The thing is*, I broke the washing machine. There's soap and water everywhere!  
**Mother:** You did what?



### Your Ending

What is the daughter's reply?

- 1 Don't worry. I'll clean up the mess.
- 2 It wasn't my fault.
- 3 You need a new one, don't you?
- 4 Your idea: \_\_\_\_\_

### Real Talk

**It'll only take a minute.** = It's going to be very quick.

**What's up?** = What's happening?

**Don't lose your cool** = Don't get angry

**The thing is** = The problem is

### About the Conversation

1. What does the daughter want?
2. Why can't her mom talk to her?
3. What is the good news?
4. What is the bad news?

### Your Turn

Role-play with a partner. Give bad news to a friend. You borrowed his/her bike, camera, video game, etc., and something happened to it. Then change roles.

### 7 About You

1. Were you ever in an accident? Or do you know anyone who was in an accident?
2. How long ago was it?
3. What happened? Was anyone hurt?
4. How did you or the person you know feel after?

## 8 Reading

### Before Reading

What does it mean to be “cool”? Discuss with a partner what things you can do to be cool.

## So You Want to Be **COOL**

**Are you worried about your clothes?**

**Are you nervous because you have to speak in front of the class?**

**Are you sad because someone said something bad about you?**

**Are you unhappy because you don't have many friends?**

**Teenage Express magazine offers some ideas on how to be cool.**



- Think of your good qualities. List them. You're going to find that you have a lot of them!
- Take care of your appearance and your clothes. Keep your hair clean and well-groomed. Your clothes don't have to be expensive. They just have to look nice. Sometimes a comfortable, classic look is better than the latest extreme style.
- Compliment people and smile a lot. Meet new people and be friendly to them. Don't be shy. If you want to meet someone, go ahead and introduce yourself. People usually like an outgoing person.
- Be very nice to everyone. But if someone bothers you, defend yourself and say what you think. Never let anyone bring you down. Stand up for yourself.
- Ignore negative things people say about you. Be confident in who you are.
- Be yourself at all times, because trying to be someone else is not good. Being cool doesn't mean being someone you are not.
- Being cool does not mean being silly or stupid. So study hard and be smart. Learn useful information about a lot of topics. Your friends are going to respect and admire you for that.
- Be proud of your qualities and who you are. Remember, being cool is mostly a matter of attitude.

### After Reading

Answer **yes** or **no**. Being cool means:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ not worrying about what others think of you.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ wearing the latest fashion in clothes.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ being friendly and sociable.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ not saying what you think.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ not studying and not doing well in school.

### Discussion

Which of the above things did you do in the past to be cool? What happened?



## 7 What Happened?



### 9 Writing

- A. Think about an accident that you saw or heard about. Draw a diagram like the one below on a piece of paper. Use your diagram to write notes about the accident.



#### Writing Corner

1. A witness report describes the events of an incident in the order they happened. It answers the five W's (who, what, where, when, why) and explains how the incident happened.
2. Use connecting words such as: *and*, *but*, *because*, *so*, and *when*.  
I was in the park **when** the accident happened. There was ice on the road, **so** the driver lost control **and** hit a tree.

- B. Read the witness report. Does it answer who, what, where, when, why, and how?

I was in my living room when I saw smoke outside. I was worried, so I went out onto the balcony to have a look. I saw my neighbor, Mr. Dooley, in his yard. The smoke was from his barbecue. He waved to me, and I went back into the house to watch the six o'clock news. A few minutes later, I heard a loud explosion. This time I ran outside because I was really scared. There was a lot of smoke, and I couldn't see anything. Then I heard a cry for help. "Over here! I'm stuck in the fence. The gas tank caught fire, and the explosion threw me across the yard." Mr. Dooley was quite upset, but fortunately he wasn't badly hurt.



- C. Write your own witness report about an accident you saw or heard about. Use your notes from the diagram and ideas from this unit.

### 10 Project

Take a survey. Ask your classmates or friends what things make them happy, sad, scared, nervous, etc. Which things come at the top of the list?

# 11 Form, Meaning and Function

## Because versus So

The subordinate conjunction *because* introduces a reason—it tells why. The conjunction *so* introduces a consequence or a result.

Most accidents happen **because** people don't pay attention. He didn't see the stop sign, **so** he caused an accident.

## So and Neither

*So...* and *Neither* both show agreement with the speaker.

*So...* shows agreement with an affirmative statement.

*Neither...* shows agreement with a negative statement.

**A:** I'm a careful driver.

**B:** **So** am I.

**A:** I'm not tired right now.

**B:** **Neither** am I.

**A:** I have some good news.

**B:** **So** do I.

**A:** I never lose my cool.

**B:** **Neither** do I.

**A:** I just heard a crash.

**B:** **So** did I.

**A:** I didn't watch the news last night.

**B:** **Neither** did I.

### A. Complete the sentences with **so** or **because**.

- The driver was sleepy, \_\_\_\_\_ he didn't see the stop sign.
- Sam called the emergency services \_\_\_\_\_ there was an accident.
- "I was scared \_\_\_\_\_ he was driving too fast," said the witness.
- He doesn't have car insurance, \_\_\_\_\_ he is extremely worried.
- She wasn't injured in the crash \_\_\_\_\_ she was wearing a seat belt.
- There were many accidents, \_\_\_\_\_ they put traffic lights at the intersection.

### B. Show agreement with the statements. Use **so** or **neither**.

- I don't have a driver's license. \_\_\_\_\_
- There's nothing to do. I'm bored. \_\_\_\_\_
- I always wear a seat belt in the car. \_\_\_\_\_
- I got injured in an accident. \_\_\_\_\_
- I'm not nervous about the test. \_\_\_\_\_
- I didn't see anything. \_\_\_\_\_

### C. Join the sentences with **so** and **because**.

- He was injured in the crash. He was taken to the hospital.
- The passenger wasn't wearing a seat belt. She hit her head.
- No one was hurt. I'm extremely relieved.
- Ahmed fell off his bike. He was riding too fast.
- The driver didn't stop at the traffic light. The accident was his fault.





# 8 What's Wrong?



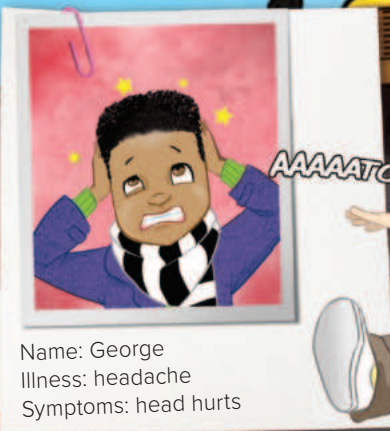
## 1 Listen and Discuss

1. What are the most common illnesses you know about?
2. What do you think happened to the boys on their school trip to the zoo? What happened to the girls on their school trip to the museum?

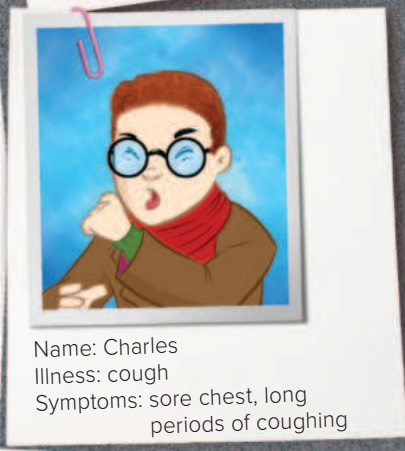
### Bad THE SCHOOL TRIP



Name: Sam  
Illness: cold  
Symptoms: sneezing, watery eyes



Name: George  
Illness: headache  
Symptoms: head hurts



Name: Charles  
Illness: cough  
Symptoms: sore chest, long periods of coughing



Name: Peter  
Illness: stomachache  
Symptoms: diarrhea, vomiting



Name: Michael  
Illness: earache  
Symptoms: pain in the ear



Name: Sarah  
Illness: flu  
Symptoms: fever, runny nose



Name: Maria  
Illness: sore throat  
Symptoms: pain in the throat



Name: Sonia  
Illness: toothache  
Symptoms: tooth aches



**FYI**

A normal body temperature is 98.6°F (37.0°C).

### Quick Check

**A. Vocabulary.** Relate body parts to illnesses.

*nose—runny nose, cold, sneezing*

**B. Comprehension.** Answer **yes** or **no**.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Sarah has a high temperature.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Maria's throat is sore.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Peter's stomach hurts.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient at the doctor's office doesn't have a fever.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The doctor says the patient should stay at home.

## 2 Pair Work

**Ask** and **answer**.

- What's the matter? / What's wrong?
- I have a stomachache.
- You should take some medicine.
- What do you do when you have a cold?
- I usually take some aspirin.



## 3 Grammar

### Should/Shouldn't

Use *should/shouldn't* to give and ask for advice.

**Q:** What **should** I do about my bad grades?

**A:** You **should** study more.

**Q:** What **should** I do when I have a stomachache?

**A:** You **shouldn't** eat so much.

### Clauses with *When*

**Q:** What do you do **when** you have a cold?

**A:** I usually take some aspirin.

**Q:** What did you do **when** you had the flu?

**A:** I stayed in bed.

**A.** Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions with *How do you feel when...?*

Use the words in the box.

**A:** How do you feel when you lose something?

**B:** I feel angry and nervous.

afraid	excited	happy	nervous	sleepy	tired
angry	fine/OK	hot	relaxed	strong	weak
bad	glad	hungry	sad	terrible	wonderful
bored	great	ill	sick	thirsty	worried

How do you feel when...?

1. you exercise?

2. you eat a lot?

3. you see or hear bad news on TV?

4. you are not prepared for a test?

5. you have nothing to do?

6. you need to go to the dentist?

7. you see a sad film on TV?

8. you don't sleep well?

9. you do well on a test?

10. you need to make an excuse?

11. you travel by plane?

12. you need to say goodbye to a friend?

**B.** Now tell your partner what you do in the situations in exercise **A.**

When I lose something, I look and look for it.

When I exercise, I usually drink a lot of water.

**C.** Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions. Use the adjectives in the box in exercise **A.**

**A:** I'm really angry.

**B:** Why?

**A:** Because I lost my keys.





D. Match the problem with the advice. Then practice with a partner.

**A:** I have a temperature.

**B:** You should take some medicine.

**Problem**

1. \_\_\_ I have a headache.
2. \_\_\_ We're very tired.
3. \_\_\_ Mariam has a stomachache.
4. \_\_\_ Ahmed has a toothache.
5. \_\_\_ The children have sore throats.
6. \_\_\_ Faisal is afraid of shots.

**Advice**

- a. You should take a rest.
- b. He should go to the dentist.
- c. He should take some pills instead.
- d. You should take some aspirin.
- e. She shouldn't eat anything right now.
- f. They should drink warm liquids.

## 4 Listening

Listen to what is wrong with the person. Write the number next to the correct photo. Write the name of the illness next to the number.



a. \_\_\_\_\_



b. \_\_\_\_\_



c. \_\_\_\_\_




 d. 1- *backache* \_\_\_\_\_



e. \_\_\_\_\_

## 5 Pronunciation

Listen to the initial consonant blends with **s**. Then practice.

 **sneeze**    **stomach**    **swallow**    **sleepy**





## 6 Conversation



**Omar:** Hi, Bud. What's the matter? You don't look well.

**Bud:** Man, I feel terrible. I have a stomachache, and I feel like vomiting.

**Omar:** You should see a doctor.

**Bud:** **I just did.** He gave me a prescription for some medicine and said I should have only tea, toast, rice, **and things like that** for a while. It's probably something I ate.

**Omar:** What did you eat?

**Bud:** **Nothing much.** I ate dinner at an all-you-can-eat buffet. I had seafood, then I had steak, and for dessert, I had pudding followed by ice cream and chocolate fudge cake, and...

Oh, the thought of food makes me sick!

**Omar:** That's a shame! I wanted to invite you to go out for dinner.

### Real Talk

**I just did.** = I did that a short time ago.

**and things like that** = and similar things (a way to give examples without naming lots of things)

**Nothing much.** = Not a great amount.

### About the Conversation

1. How does Bud feel?
2. What's wrong with him?
3. What advice did the doctor give him?
4. What did Omar want to do?

### Your Turn

Your partner is sick. Ask what is wrong. Give some advice on what to do.

## 7 About You

1. Are you usually a healthy person?
2. When were you last ill?
3. What was the matter with you?
4. What did you do for the problem?
5. What do you do to keep healthy?





## 8 Reading

### Before Reading

What do you know about the common cold and the flu?

# Atchoo! Is It a Cold or the Flu?

When your nose is blocked, your eyes are watery, your throat is sore, you are coughing and sneezing constantly, and you are shivering, then you have influenza, or the flu. Or is it just a common cold? The symptoms of both a cold and the flu are very similar, and very often the two illnesses are confused.

People get both illnesses in more or less the same way. A person sneezing or coughing transmits the infection through the air. Sometimes people with the virus wipe their noses or eyes with their fingers, and then touch objects around them, such as a doorknob, a telephone, a keyboard, or any other everyday object. Other people come into contact with these items with viruses on them, and pick up the viruses that way.

Colds usually last for five to seven days and are caused by viruses. The body's own defense mechanisms need to fight the viruses. Unfortunately, there are more than 80 different constantly mutating rhinoviruses. So vaccination against colds is impossible. Medicines provide temporary relief from symptoms, but they cannot cure the cold.

The flu has the same symptoms as the traditional cold. Additional symptoms are a high fever and severe muscle aches and pains. The effects of the flu can also be far more serious. It can cause pneumonia and kill its victims. In the past, the flu killed more people than any other viral disease. For example, 20 million people of all ages died in the 1919 flu epidemic. It actually affected younger people more than old because their bodies didn't have defenses against the virus. Nowadays, there are vaccines for the flu that protect from some viruses. Unfortunately, new viruses appear all the time.



### After Reading

1. Write three things that are the same about colds and the flu.
2. How is the flu different from colds?



## 8 What's Wrong?



### 9 Writing

- A. Read about heat exhaustion. Have a class discussion. What are the symptoms? Are there any other symptoms? Do you agree with the advice? Do you have any other advice?

Do you feel dizzy and weak? Are you sweating a lot? Do your muscles ache? Do you feel like vomiting? When you spend too many hours in the hot sun, you can suffer from heat exhaustion. For relief, follow this advice.

- You should get out of the sun. Find a cool or air-conditioned place.
- Take a cool shower or bath. You can also spray cool water on your skin.
- You should drink plenty of water, but don't drink quickly. You should drink small amounts slowly.
- You should rest. Lie down and put your feet up. This prevents shock or fainting.
- If the symptoms continue, you should see a doctor.



#### Writing Corner

1. Bullet points (•) help make a list clear and simple to read. For example, when there is a list of ingredients in a recipe or a list of symptoms for an illness.
2. When there is a list of instructions or steps to follow in a certain order, it is better to use numbers, and not bullet points.
3. With short phrases or words, do not use punctuation after each bullet point. When there is a complete sentence or sentences, use the correct punctuation.

- B. What are some common symptoms of the flu? Write them in the chart. How can you relieve the symptoms? Write notes in the advice column.

Symptom	Advice
•	
•	
•	
•	

- C. What should you do when you have the flu? Write about it. Use your notes from the chart and other ideas from this unit. Use bullet points for the symptoms or the advice.

### 10 Project

Research home remedies for common illnesses. Present your remedies to the class and discuss them.

# 11 Form, Meaning and Function

Subject Pronouns	Object Pronouns	Possessive Adjectives	Possessive Pronouns
I	me	my	mine
you	you	your	yours
he	him	his	his
she	her	her	hers
it	it	its	its
they	them	their	theirs
you	you	your	yours
we	us	our	ours



## Subject + Verb + Object

**Subject Pronouns** take the place of the subject in a sentence. They come before the verb.

Tom likes football. **He** likes football.

**Object Pronouns** take the place of the object in a sentence. They come after the verb.

Tom likes *football*. He likes **it**.

**Possessive Adjectives** show who owns something. They go before a noun.

Tom's favorite sport is football. **His** favorite sport is football.

**Possessive Pronouns** show ownership. They take the place of a noun.

It's not *Tom's football*. It's *my football*. It's not **his**. It's **mine**.

**A.** Replace the underlined words in the conversation with the correct pronouns or possessive adjectives.

**Sam:** AAA... Atchoo!

**Dan:** Sam, what's wrong with (1) Sam?

**Sam:** I think I caught a virus on the school trip. Everyone in my class caught (2) the virus. Charles had a cough. (3) Charles sat next to (4) Sam on the bus, so perhaps I caught (5) the virus from (6) Charles. It was cold at the zoo, and Mr. Parker told (7) my classmates and I to put on (8) my classmates' and my jackets. (9) Mr. Parker said that (10) my classmates and I should stay warm. Well, I didn't listen to (11) Mr. Parker. I didn't wear (12) my jacket and some of my friends didn't wear (13) my friends' jackets. Maybe that made (14) the virus worse.

**Dan:** (15) Sam should see a doctor.

**Sam:** I did. (16) The doctor gave (17) Sam a prescription for some medicine. (18) The doctor said I should take (19) the medicine three times a day. (20) The medicine tastes terrible!





# 9 Let's Go Out



## 1 Listen and Discuss

1. Which of the free-time activities and chores are most common in your country? Add others.
2. Which fun activities and chores do you do most often?



3 go for a drive

## Free-Time Activities

Things you do for fun

1 go shopping



2 go bowling



4 go swimming



Your ideas: \_\_\_\_\_

## CHORES

Things you have to do around the house (obligations)

1 clean your room



4 dust



6

take out the garbage



2 mow the lawn



3 do the laundry



5 wash the dishes



Your ideas: \_\_\_\_\_





**Ali:** What should we do this evening?  
**Badr:** Why don't we hang out at the mall?  
**Ali:** Good idea!

**Mike:** Come on, Josh. Let's go for a ride.  
**Josh:** I can't. I have to clean my room.  
**Mike:** Why don't you do it later?

## Quick Check






**A. Vocabulary.** What free-time activities and chores do you usually do? Mark them. Compare your answers with a partner.

**B. Comprehension.** Answer **yes** or **no**.





1. \_\_\_ Badr wants to stay home this evening.
2. \_\_\_ Ali thinks it's a good idea to hang out at the mall.
3. \_\_\_ Josh has to do chores at home.
4. \_\_\_ Josh accepts the offer.
5. \_\_\_ Mike offers to help Josh.

## 2 Pair Work

**A. Make** and **respond to** suggestions.

-  What should we do on the weekend?
-  Let's go for a drive along the ocean.
-  OK. Good idea.
-  What do you want to do tonight?
-  Why don't we stay home and watch a film on TV?

**B. Ask** and **answer** about obligations.

-  What do you have to do today?
-  I have to do the laundry.
-  Let's go to the mall.
-  I can't. I have to babysit.







## 3 Grammar

### Should, Why Don't/Doesn't...?, and Let's for Suggestions

Use *should* to ask for and give suggestions.

**A:** What **should** we do tonight?

**B:** I don't care.

**A:** What color sweater **should** I buy?

**B:** You **should** buy the green one.

You can also use *Why don't/doesn't...?* and *Let's* to make suggestions.

**A:** I'm cold.

**B:** **Why don't** you put on a sweater?

**A:** She's tired.

**B:** **Why doesn't** she take a rest?

**A:** **Let's** go out for dinner.

**B:** Yeah. Good idea.

**A:** **Why don't** we order a pizza?

**B:** No. **Let's** eat out instead.

To accept suggestions, you can say: *OK; That's a good idea; Sure; All right; or That sounds good.*

To politely refuse suggestions, you can apologize, say thank you, or suggest something else: *Sorry, I can't; Thanks, but maybe another time; or Let's... instead.*

### Go + Verb + -ing

Go + verb + *-ing* is used for many free-time activities: *go cycling, go hiking, go skiing, go surfing, go horseback riding, etc.*

He **goes swimming** three times a week, and he sometimes **goes hiking** on the weekend.

### Have to/Had to

Use *have to/had to* to express obligation.

**A:** Let's go to the mall.

**B:** I can't. I **have to** do my homework.

**A:** Why didn't you do your homework?

**B:** I **had to** visit a relative in hospital.

**A.** Work with a partner. Take turns. Make suggestions about things to do and then respond. Use the pictures and also use your own ideas.

**A:** Let's play tennis.

**B:** No. Let's go bowling instead. OR  
Why don't we go bowling?

**A:** What should we do?

**B:** Let's play tennis. OR  
Why don't we play tennis?

go to the amusement park



go horseback riding



go skiing



B. Complete the sentences with excuses. Use the reasons in the pictures.



- 💡 Omar can't play tennis today because he has to study for a test.
1. Amal is going to be a little late because \_\_\_\_\_.
  2. Noura can't go shopping right now because \_\_\_\_\_.
  3. Brian can't go out this afternoon because \_\_\_\_\_.
  4. Adnan isn't going to football practice because \_\_\_\_\_.
  5. Matt can't help them now because \_\_\_\_\_.

C. Plan your "To-Do" list for the week.  
Compare with a partner.

- 💡 Sunday I have to study English.



## 4 Listening

Saeed is inviting friends to go out. Listen to the invitations. Match the excuses.

- |               |   |
|---------------|---|
| 1. ___ Imad   | a. has to babysit                         |
| 2. ___ Khalid | b. has to clean his bedroom               |
| 3. ___ Jabir  | c. has to visit his uncle in the hospital |
| 4. ___ Majid  | d. has to study for a test                |

## 5 Pronunciation

Listen to the reduction of **have + to**. Then practice.

What do you **have to** do today?

I **have to** clean my room.

Do you **have to** stay home tonight?

Yes. We **have to** do a lot of homework.





## 6 Conversation



### About the Conversation

1. What does Fahd want to do?
2. Why doesn't Yahya want to go?

### Your Turn

Invite a friend to go out. Make suggestions. Agree on a meeting place.

## 7 About You

1. What things do you have to do today?
2. What things did you have to do yesterday?
3. What things do you usually have to do?

Oh, **come on!** Let's go cycling to the beach. The weather's great.

### Your Ending

What excuse does Yahya give?

- 1 The problem is, my brother can't ride a bike.
- 2 We won't have fun if my little brother is around.
- 3 I can't **let down** my parents.
- 4 Your idea: \_\_\_\_\_

### Real Talk

**come on** = used to encourage someone to do something

**let down** = disappoint someone



رابط الدرس الرقمي  
www.iem.edu.sa

## 8 Reading

### Before Reading

What kinds of chores do you do at home?  
Who decides the chores you do?



# Someone Has to Do It!

Parents often complain that they always have to tell their teenage children to do their chores. Parents think their kids are irresponsible. On the other hand, teens feel **their** parents are always nagging and complaining.

A major problem is that parents think that teens need to do the chores on **their** schedule, while the teens think, "Why do I have to do it now, when I can do it later?" **This** usually leads to unnecessary conflict between teens and their parents.

The general questions parents usually ask about chores are the following: Should teens have them? Should teens and parents agree on a list of chores together? Should teens have freedom to decide when to do **them**?

One mother says, "My daughter and I make a list of chores each week. That way **she** can organize her time for schoolwork, housework, and free time, too." Another

parent only gives his son pocket money after he has done all his chores around the house. **He** says, "No chores, no money. It makes teens responsible for earning their money, rather than just simply giving **them** an allowance." Some teenagers complain, "My friends don't have to do chores, so why should I?"

Normally parents expect their teenage sons and daughters to help around the house. But parents and teens have to agree on the kind of chores and when the teens have to do them. One mom's son wants to do his chores *after* he goes out with **his** friends, but then he's usually too tired. Another mother only lets **her** daughter see her friends *after* she finishes all the housework. But housework never ends! So what's the solution?

Teens and parents have to reach a compromise. There has to be common sense on both sides, don't you think?

### After Reading

Write two lists: (1) What parents think about teens' chores, and (2) What teens think about their chores.

### Discussion

In your opinion, how can teens and parents reach a compromise about chores?





## 9 Writing

A. Look back at the **Reading** on page 79. What do the bold-faced pronouns or possessive adjectives refer to?

- |                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. It (in the title) _____   | 6. she (paragraph 4) _____  |
| 2. their (paragraph 1) _____ | 7. He (paragraph 4) _____   |
| 3. their (paragraph 2) _____ | 8. them (paragraph 4) _____ |
| 4. This (paragraph 2) _____  | 9. his (paragraph 5) _____  |
| 5. them (paragraph 3) _____  | 10. her (paragraph 5) _____ |

### Writing Corner

Subject and object pronouns and possessive adjectives help to link sentences in writing.

- Pronouns and possessive adjectives link ideas in sentences.  
Most teenagers don't want to do chores when **their** parents expect **them** to.
- Pronouns help avoid repeating the same word or words.  
One mother lets **her daughter** see **her** friends after **she** finishes the housework.
- Demonstrative pronouns like *this* and *that* can refer to one word or a whole idea.  
Some teenagers refuse to do their chores. **This** can often lead to conflict.

B. Complete the paragraph with suitable pronouns or possessive adjectives.

Parents often complain that (1) \_\_\_\_\_ teenage children spend too much time on the Internet. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ think that (3) \_\_\_\_\_ children should do other activities such as reading books, playing a sport, or doing homework. On the other hand, teenagers feel that (4) \_\_\_\_\_ parents don't realize the importance of the Internet. For many teenagers, the Internet is a way to socialize and stay in touch with (5) \_\_\_\_\_ friends. (6) \_\_\_\_\_ also use (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to do research for school assignments. Besides that, teenagers surf the Internet to learn about things that interest (8) \_\_\_\_\_ and to learn more about the world in general.



C. Write about how parents and teenagers feel about homework. Remember to use pronouns and possessive adjectives to link sentences.

## 10 Project

Work in a group. Find out from your classmates the most common excuses for:

- |                         |                             |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. being late to school | 3. not doing their chores   |
| 2. arriving home late   | 4. not doing their homework |





# 11 Form, Meaning and Function

## Must/Mustn't

The form of the modal verb *must* is the same for all subjects. It is followed by the base form of the main verb without *to*.

We use *must* to express obligation and necessity.

We **must** follow the rules.

He **must** stop at the traffic lights.

We use *mustn't* to express that something is forbidden or not allowed.

You **mustn't** talk during the test.

They **mustn't** park on the sidewalk.

## Have To/Don't Have To

The form of *have to* changes to agree with the subject. It can also be used in the past tense as *had to*. It is followed by the base form of the main verb.

We use *have to* to express obligation and necessity.

They **have to** wear uniforms at school.

She **has to** do her chores

I **had to** clean my room.

**Do** we **have to** be there early?

**Does** he **have to** go now?

**Did** you **have to** work late?

We use *don't have to* to say there is NO obligation; it isn't necessary. The past form is *didn't have to*.

You **don't have to** iron the socks.

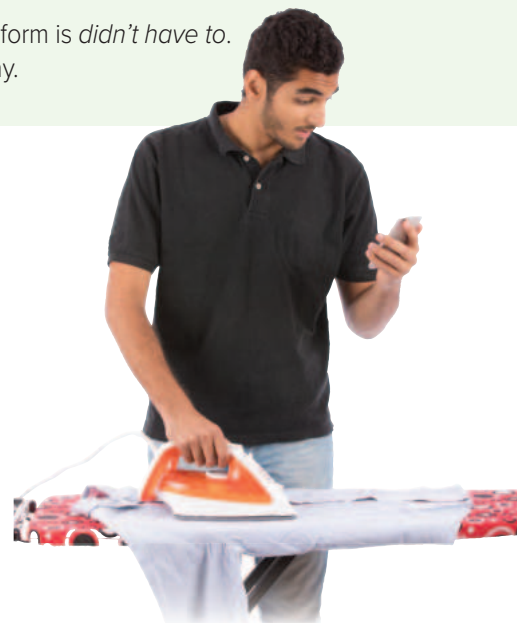
He **didn't have to** work yesterday.

### A. Complete the sentences with *has to*, *must*, or *mustn't*.

1. Omar \_\_\_\_\_ do his chores.
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ hang out with his friends now.
3. He \_\_\_\_\_ clean up the kitchen.
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ wash the dishes.
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ clean the floor.
6. He \_\_\_\_\_ take out the garbage.
7. He \_\_\_\_\_ talk on the phone now.
8. He \_\_\_\_\_ be lazy and irresponsible.

### B. Complete the sentences with the correct form of *must* or *have to*.

1. Look how long the grass is! We really \_\_\_\_\_ mow the lawn.
2. Noura \_\_\_\_\_ finish her assignment because it is due tomorrow.
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ go to school yesterday. It was Saturday.
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ cross the street when the light is red.
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ babysit, so I didn't hang out with my friends yesterday.
6. What time \_\_\_\_\_ we \_\_\_\_\_ leave for the airport? Our flight's at 10 a.m.
7. Children \_\_\_\_\_ eat a healthy breakfast every morning.
8. Mother \_\_\_\_\_ cook tonight because we're going out for dinner.
9. How long \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ wait for the bus this morning?
10. We \_\_\_\_\_ forget to take our camera with us on vacation.



# 10 It's a Bargain!



## 1 Listen and Discuss

Where do you like to shop? Why? What do you look for when you shop: price, brand, or service?





Excuse me. Where can I find sheets and pillowcases?

In the Home Department, on the fourth floor.

How do I look in this windbreaker?

It's too big for you.

Whose backpack is that?

Oh, it's mine. Thank you!

OUTERWEAR  
• SWEATSHIRTS  
• SWEATPANTS  
• WINDBREAKERS  
• RAINCOATS  
CASUAL WEAR

You should keep it with you at all times.

## Quick Check

**A. Vocabulary.** Where can you find these items in the department store?









1. a blender and a microwave
2. perfume
3. sheets and pillows
4. a man's suit

**B. Comprehension.** Answer about the people and the store.

1. Which pair of earrings does the girl prefer?
2. Whose bag is on the floor?
3. Where can the young man find sheets?
4. What's wrong with the windbreaker?

## 2 Pair Work

**Ask** and **answer** about the store.

-  Where can I buy a wallet?
-  In accessories. Wallets are on sale now.
-  Which boots do you like?
-  The black ones.
-  Excuse me? Where is the women's department?
-  Take the escalator. It's on the second floor.
-  Are these sunglasses yours?
-  Yes, they're mine.



## 3 Grammar

### Possessive Adjectives

It's	my	backpack.
	your	
	his	
	her	
	our	
	their	

### Possessive Pronouns

It's	mine.
	yours.
	his.
	hers.
	ours.
	theirs.

### Question Word: *Whose*

**Q:** **Whose** backpack is this?  
**A:** It's mine. It belongs to me.

**Q:** **Whose** glasses are these?  
**A:** They're hers. They belong to that lady.

### Pronoun: *One/Ones*

**Q:** Which coat do you like?  
**A:** The green **one**.

**Q:** Which boots do you prefer?  
**A:** The leather **ones**.

### Quantitative: *Too*

This jacket is **too** small for me, and the shoes are **too** big.

**A.** Ask and answer.

**A:** Is this Ali's windbreaker?  
**B:** Yes, it's his.



**B.** Now ask and answer questions with **whose** for the items in exercise **A**.

**A:** Whose windbreaker is this?  
**B:** It's Ali's.





C. Complete the conversation. Choose the correct words.

**Mom:** Are these (1. **your** / **yours**) socks?

**Faris:** They aren't (2. **my** / **mine**).  
I think they're Ali's.  
They're (3. **his** / **him**) size.

**Mom:** Are these (4. **your** / **yours**)?

**Ali:** No, (5. **my** / **mine**) socks don't  
have holes. I think they're Fahd's.

**Mom:** Fahd, are these (6. **your** / **yours**) socks?

**Fahd:** Let me see. Yes, they smell like (7. **my** / **mine**).



## 4 Listening

Listen. Fill in the missing information in the ad.

# Milford's SALE

Open from \_\_\_\_\_ A.M. to \_\_\_\_\_ P.M.

**Weekend Only**

All major credit cards accepted.

<p><b>WOOL</b></p> <p>_____ :</p> <p style="text-align: center; background-color: yellow; border-radius: 50%; padding: 5px;"><b>\$29.99</b></p>	<p>_____ % discount on all</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>RAINCOATS</b></p> 	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>MEN'S DEPARTMENT</b></p> <p>Clearance Sale on _____</p> <p style="text-align: center;">from <b>\$12</b></p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>WOMEN'S SHOES</b></p> <p>Buy one pair, and get _____ % off a second pair.</p> <p style="text-align: right; font-weight: bold; color: red;">\$45.50</p> 
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>SCARVES</b></p> <p>Buy _____, and get _____.</p>  	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>PERSONAL COMPUTERS</b></p> <p>_____ % discount on Primus 230</p> 	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>PERFUME AND MAKEUP</b></p> <p style="text-align: center;">Special _____ with all purchases</p>  	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>JEWELRY</b></p> <p>FREE pair of _____ with purchase of a necklace and a ring.</p> 

## 5 Pronunciation

Certain sounds are often linked between words. This means they are pronounced together. Listen and practice.

The hats are on sale.

The child is in the toy department.

The shoes are too small.

The belt is on sale.

# 10 It's a Bargain!

## 6 Conversation



**Interviewer:** I'm from *Teenage Express* magazine. We're doing a survey of teenage shopping habits. **Do you mind answering** a few questions?

**Faisal:** **Not at all.** What do you want to know?

**Interviewer:** Do you shop online?

**Faisal:** No, I never shop online.

**Interviewer:** Why not?

**Faisal:** I don't trust the security features on the Internet.

**Interviewer:** What about your friends?

**Faisal:** Very few shop online or make payments via the computer.

**Interviewer:** And do you like to buy designer clothes?

**Faisal:** **Not really.** I like clothes that aren't too expensive and that are comfortable.

**Interviewer:** And in general, what do you spend most of your money on?

**Faisal:** I spend my money mostly on food, video games, and... electronic **stuff**.

### About the Conversation

1. What is the interviewer doing in the mall?
2. What does he want to know?
3. Why doesn't Faisal shop online?
4. What does he spend his money on?

### Your Turn

Do a similar survey about the shopping habits of your classmates. What do they spend their money on?

### Real Talk

**Do you mind + verb + -ing** = a polite request  
**Not at all.** = a response to "Do you mind?" to agree to the request  
**Not really.** = a polite way to answer "no"  
**stuff** = things in general



## 7 About You

1. Do you shop online? Why or why not?
2. What do you buy online?
3. Do you like to go shopping?
4. Where do you usually shop?
5. What are popular places for shopping?
6. What things do you spend your money on?
7. How much money do you spend each week?
8. What is the most expensive thing you have ever bought?

## 8 Reading

### Before Reading

Look at the photos below. What do you think people can buy in these places?

# The Best Place to Shop—and Be!

In an age where you can buy almost anything on the Internet, thousands of people all over the world still prefer to do their shopping in traditional places. In general, shoppers look for bargains, and the best prices are usually found in street markets. Many markets around the world have a similar lively atmosphere and sell nearly anything you can imagine from jewelry and clothes, fresh produce, spices, and fish, to carpets, electronics, and livestock.

Riyadh has some of the world's most beautiful modern shopping malls, with designer boutiques and brand names. But if you're looking for real bargains, you'll head for some of the traditional *souqs* in town. *Haraj*\* is a secondhand market just east of the city. Impress your friends and dress in Chanel and Armani for a fraction of the price, or get that new kitchen appliance you've been dreaming of. Many of the so-called "used" items aren't used at all—just don't tell anyone where you bought it.

Al-Bat'ha District is home to many traditional markets. Whether you are looking for electronics and watches, jewelry, perfume, furniture, car accessories, bicycles, or food—they sell it all at often ridiculous prices. For more traditional goods, antiques, and souvenirs check out Al-Thumairi near the Al-Masmak Fort. This is particularly popular with tourists. And nearby is the Al-Deira market where everything is worth its weight in gold, literally. Looking for a camel? They come in all shapes, colors, and sizes at Souq Al-Jimal.

Visitors go to the local *souqs* for more than just shopping. You can see and meet an amazing mixture of people from around the world. Many feel that the cultural experience is the main attraction of these markets.



**FYI\*** *Haraj* is a large market where people buy and sell both new and used items, such as furniture, carpets, computers, electronics, car parts, clothing, and toys.

### After Reading

1. What is similar about street markets around the world?
2. Does Haraj only sell used items?
3. Which 3 words or phrases in the text mean low cost or inexpensive?
4. What is the most interesting attraction of traditional markets?

\*FYI: For Your Information







## 9 Writing

A. Read the text. What are the advantages of shopping online?



Personally, I can't stand shopping in department stores or malls. They're too crowded, and it takes too long to find what you want. You buy something and then a week later, you see it on sale.

I prefer to do my shopping online. It's convenient, quick, and easy. When you know what you want, it takes just a few minutes to compare prices. A lot of e-stores guarantee the lowest price, and they also make exchanges or refund your money when you are not satisfied with a product. Many people think e-shopping isn't safe, but that's not true. You need to choose well-known and secure websites. And you don't have to use a credit card because there are other ways to pay without giving personal information.

I usually buy electronic stuff, accessories for my bike, and sports clothes. I am never disappointed with the things I buy. Only once, I exchanged a bicycle helmet because it was too small. But that wasn't a problem. I think that I save money this way, because I only buy what I want. I don't spend money on things that I don't need.

### Writing Corner

- In informal writing, the subject *you* can refer to any person or people in general.  
**You** can save time when **you** shop online, but **you** can't see the product in person.  
 When **you** shop in a store, **you** can try clothes on before **you** buy them.

B. Complete the chart with notes about the advantages and disadvantages of shopping in a store and shopping online. What do you prefer? Why?

	Advantages	Disadvantages
Shopping in a store		
Shopping online		
My preference / Why		

C. Compare shopping in a store and shopping online. Write about the advantages and disadvantages of each. Say what you prefer. Use your notes from the chart and ideas from this unit.

## 10 Project

In a group, brainstorm ideas for a department store advertisement to attract teenagers. Write and design the advertisement. Display it in class.

# 11 Form, Meaning and Function

## Can/May/Could

We use the modal verbs *can*, *may*, and *could* to ask for permission.  
We use *can* and *may* to give permission and *can't* and *may not* to refuse.

**FYI** *May/Could* are more formal

### Ask for Permission

**Can** I have another cookie?

**May** I use your computer?

**Could** we come with you?

### Give Permission

Yes, you **can**.

Yes, you **may**.

### Refuse

No, you **can't**.

No, you **may not**.

We also use *can* and *could* to make requests and offers.

**Could** you bring me some water?

We **can** gift wrap that for you.

## May/Might

We use *may* and *might* to show possibility or uncertainty.

We **may** go shopping this evening.

She **might** not come to class today.

### A. Match the questions with the answers.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. _____ Can I try these shoes on?           | a. Sure. Is this one big enough?              |
| 2. _____ May I pay by check?                 | b. Good idea. How about Chinese?              |
| 3. _____ Can you lend me some money?         | c. Sorry, we only take cash and credit cards. |
| 4. _____ May I have a bigger bag, please?    | d. Certainly. Do you like this color?         |
| 5. _____ Could I see that gold necklace?     | e. Yes. What size do you take?                |
| 6. _____ Can we eat lunch in the food court? | f. That depends. How much?                    |
| 7. _____ Could you wrap this? It's a gift.   | g. Of course. May I see your student card?    |
| 8. _____ Could I have a student discount?    | h. This one, with the diamond?                |

### B. Complete the conversation with **can**, **can't**, **could**, **may**, or **might**. Then practice the conversation with a partner.

**A:** (1) \_\_\_\_\_ I return this jacket, please? There's a hole in the sleeve.

**B:** We (2) \_\_\_\_\_ fix it for you.

**A:** No, thank you. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ I just have my money back?

**B:** I'm sorry. We (4) \_\_\_\_\_ give refunds, but you (5) \_\_\_\_\_ choose another item from the store. I (6) \_\_\_\_\_ show you some of our new jackets.

**A:** All right.

**B:** These two jackets are the same price...

**A:** No, no. It's for my son's graduation. He (7) \_\_\_\_\_ not like the color of this one. And that one (8) \_\_\_\_\_ be too big.

**B:** How about this one? It's a bit more expensive...

**A:** No, thank you. On second thought, (9) \_\_\_\_\_ you please fix the one I have?

**B:** Certainly. We'll have the jacket ready for you tomorrow morning. And I (10) \_\_\_\_\_ give you a ten percent discount the next time you shop here.



# 11 There's No Comparison



## 1 Listen and Discuss

Look at the headings and the photos.  
What do you know about the topics?

## Amazing Facts

### The World's Most Popular Sport

Football is the most popular international team sport. It is much more popular than American football, basketball, or baseball. FIFA (Fédération Internationale de Football Association), the worldwide football organization, has approximately 7.1 million teams in 301,000 clubs, with 265 million players around the globe. It has more members than the United Nations. The World Cup is one of the most spectacular sporting events in the world. Every four years, over a billion people follow the month-long competition between the top 32 football-playing nations on TV.



### The World's Most Expensive Hotel

The Burj Al Arab Hotel in Dubai is the world's most famous seven-star hotel. The hotel is an architectural wonder. It looks like a huge sail. Its height is 1,053 feet (321 meters), making it one of the world's tallest hotels. The Burj Al Arab (Arabian Tower) is built on a human-made island. It is the world's most luxurious hotel. It features marble and glass from Italy, 24-karat-gold-plated faucets and doorknobs, mirrors that turn into TV screens in the bathrooms, rotating beds, and all the latest technology. The cheapest suite is more than \$1,500 per night, and the most expensive suite can cost over \$25,000.







### The Great White: The World's Most Dangerous Fish

The great white shark is one of the oldest living species on Earth—it existed 350 million years ago. It is the largest and the most dangerous predatory fish, and it is the most feared by humans. Great white sharks can grow up to 20 feet (6 meters) long and weigh up to 4,400 pounds (2,000 kilograms). They have about 3,000 teeth arranged in several rows. When the front teeth break or fall out, these teeth are replaced by others from the next row. Sharks' hearing is very sensitive, and they can hear their prey many miles away. They can also detect one part per million of blood in seawater.




### Did you know?

- Tokyo is bigger than Shanghai and Mexico City. It is the world's biggest city with the most people.
- The banana is the most popular fruit in the world.
- Diamonds are the world's hardest elements and the most expensive precious stones.
- The Arabian Oryx is one of the most endangered species in the Arabian Peninsula. It was extinct in the wild in the 1970s, but it was saved by zoos and reintroduced to its habitat.
- The Peregrine Falcon is the fastest moving creature on Earth. It can dive at speeds of up to 200 miles (320 kilometers) per hour!

### Quick Check

**A. Vocabulary.** Underline the adjectives used to compare in the readings.





 most dangerous                      oldest

**B. Comprehension.** Answer **yes** or **no**.

1. \_\_\_ The tallest hotel in the world is in Tokyo.
2. \_\_\_ Baseball is the most popular team sport in the world.
3. \_\_\_ Bananas are more popular than mangoes.
4. \_\_\_ Diamonds are cheaper than most precious stones.
5. \_\_\_ Mexico City is the biggest city in the world.

## 2 Pair Work

**Ask** and **answer** questions about the information on these pages.

-  Which is the world's most dangerous fish?
-  It's the great white shark.
-  Is Mexico City bigger than Tokyo?
-  No, it isn't. It's smaller.

# 11 There's No Comparison



## 3 Grammar

### Comparative and Superlative Forms of Adjectives

#### The Comparative

Use adjective + *-er* or *more* + adjective to make the comparative.

Imad is **tall**. Ahmed is **taller** than Imad.

Imad is **intelligent**. Ahmed is **more intelligent** than Imad.

**Note:** The comparative is often used with *than*.

#### The Superlative

Use *the* + adjective + *-est* or *the most* + adjective to make the superlative.

Ahmed is **the tallest** boy in the class. He is also **the smartest**.

Ahmed is **the most intelligent** boy in the class. He is also **the most athletic**.

#### Formation

Use *-er* or *-est* for one-syllable adjectives and adjectives that end in *y*; for example, happy–**happier**–**happiest**.

Use *more* or *most* for longer adjectives.

#### Spelling Rules:

Most adjectives: old–**older**–**oldest**

Adjectives ending in *e*: nice–**nicer**–**nicest**

Adjectives ending in *y*: easy–**easier**–**easiest**

Adjectives ending in one vowel followed by one consonant: big–**bigger**–**biggest**, hot–**hotter**–**hottest**.

Some adjectives have irregular comparative and superlative forms.

**good–better–the best; bad–worse–the worst**

- A.** Complete the sentences with the comparative or superlative forms of the adjectives in parentheses. Use *the* before superlatives.

1. Jeddah is \_\_\_\_\_ (interesting) place I know.
2. Gold is \_\_\_\_\_ (heavy) and \_\_\_\_\_ (expensive) than mercury.
3. I think that blue jacket looks \_\_\_\_\_ (good) on you than the red one.
4. Summer is \_\_\_\_\_ (warm) and \_\_\_\_\_ (dry) time of the year.
5. The clock tower of the Abraj Al-Bait Towers in Makkah is one of \_\_\_\_\_ (tall) buildings in the world.
6. My room is \_\_\_\_\_ (quiet) room in the house. I can't hear any noise.
7. The Taj Mahal in India is one of \_\_\_\_\_ (beautiful) buildings in the world.
8. The Sahara Desert in Africa is much \_\_\_\_\_ (big) than the Arabian Desert.

- B.** Work with a partner. Disagree with the following statements.

**A:** The Panama Canal is older than the Eiffel Tower. (new)

**B:** No, it isn't. It's newer.



▲ diamonds



▲ steel

1. The Amazon is longer than the Nile. (short)
2. Bananas are cheaper than apples. (expensive)
3. Steel is much harder than diamonds. (soft)
4. China is larger than Canada. (small)
5. Plane travel is more dangerous than car travel. (safe)
6. Horses are stronger than elephants. (weak)



C. Work with a partner. Ask and answer. Give your opinion.

A: Which is smarter?

B: I think a dolphin is smarter than a chicken.

smart



1. fast



2. difficult



3. dangerous



4. exciting



5. popular



6. easy

D. Work with a partner. Give your ideas or opinions on the topics in exercise C. Use superlatives.

I think cheetahs are the fastest animals on land.

## 4 Listening

Listen to the guide giving interesting facts about diamonds on a tour of a diamond mine. Answer **yes** or **no**.

1. \_\_\_ Diamonds are formed deep down in the Earth.
2. \_\_\_ You can't break a diamond with a hammer.
3. \_\_\_ The world's largest diamond was found in Britain.
4. \_\_\_ The Great Star of Africa weighs over 530 karats.

## 5 Pronunciation

Listen. Note the **er** sound at the end of the words. Then practice.

better

faster

hotter

stronger

Summer **er** is better **er** than winter **er**.

Is a cheetah faster **er** than a horse?



▲ Cullinan Diamond Mine, South Africa



# 11 There's No Comparison



## 6 Conversation

- Ali:** So, ... *What's new?*
- Badr:** I bought myself a computer.
- Ali:** What kind?
- Badr:** A laptop. Laptops are friendlier to use and are cheaper than other computers.
- Ali:** Does it have Internet?
- Badr:** Not yet. I'm going to install that next week.
- Ali:** I don't like laptops. I prefer desktops. Desktops are easier to use, especially if you have to write and print a lot. Laptops... you have to recharge them all the time, and their screen is much smaller.
- Badr:** I don't agree. Laptops are the best. You can surf the Net, send emails, and study anywhere. You don't have to wait until you get home.
- Ali:** Well, I still think desktops are much more convenient than laptops.
- Badr:** Yeah, but you can't take one with you.



### Real Talk

**What's new?** = Tell me about what happened to you recently.

## About the Conversation

1. What does Badr say about laptops?
2. Why does Ali prefer desktops?
3. Why doesn't Ali like laptops?
4. Why does Badr think laptops are the best?

## Your Turn

Work in a group. Choose a high-tech device or a sport. Argue for and against it with another group.

## 7 About You

1. What kind of computer do you prefer? Why?
2. Who is the youngest / oldest student in your class?
3. Who do you think is the smartest / best student?
4. Which is the hottest / coldest city in your country?
5. Which is the most famous city in your country?
6. Who is the best football player in your country?
7. Where can you eat the best food in your town?
8. What things are better or worse in your neighborhood now than five years ago?



www.iien.edu.sa

## 8 Reading

### Before Reading

Imagine the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia in 2030. Read the text and find out about positive changes for society in health care and education, culture and entertainment, business and job opportunities, and more.

# رؤية VISION 2030 المملكة العربية السعودية KINGDOM OF SAUDI ARABIA



### Vision 2030 Kingdom of Saudi Arabia: Building a Brighter Future for All

The Kingdom of Saudi Arabia has a great amount of natural resources, such as oil, gold, phosphate, uranium, and other valuable minerals. But

more importantly, it is blessed with the strength, potential, and ambition of its people. The children of the Kingdom's family-oriented, Islamic society will be the force of the future.

Families will receive all the support they need to raise their children according to Islamic values and help them develop their abilities. There will be more libraries, galleries, and museums in different areas. Cultural events and activities will be organized to educate and provide entertainment. Health care and education will be available to all citizens making their lives happier and more secure.

A healthy economy will offer opportunities to large and small businesses. Quality services and facilities will attract investors from different countries. A renewed business environment will provide professional opportunities to all citizens. A high quality educational system that meets the needs of the job market will provide Saudi professionals with the necessary knowledge and skills.

The Kingdom's strategic position will make it an international trade and transportation center. It will become the hub that will connect Africa, Asia, and Europe.

Telecommunications and information technology will be developed in and around cities. This will make it easier for people to communicate across the globe and access information.

Government services will support the growth and development of private and non-profit organizations and help them to operate successfully.



King Abdulaziz Center for World Culture - Ithra

*\*\*Adapted from the text of the Vision Programs at <https://vision2030.gov.sa/en> and from the text that was drafted by the Council of Economic and Development Affairs as instructed by the Custodian of the Two Holy Mosques King Salman bin Abdulaziz Al Saud.*

### After Reading

1. Name some of the natural resources of Saudi Arabia.
2. What kind of society does the Kingdom have?
3. What type of social services, e.g. health care, education, and events will be available?
4. Describe the renewed business environment in 2030.
5. How will people benefit from technological development?
6. What will attract investors from other countries?

# 11 There's No Comparison

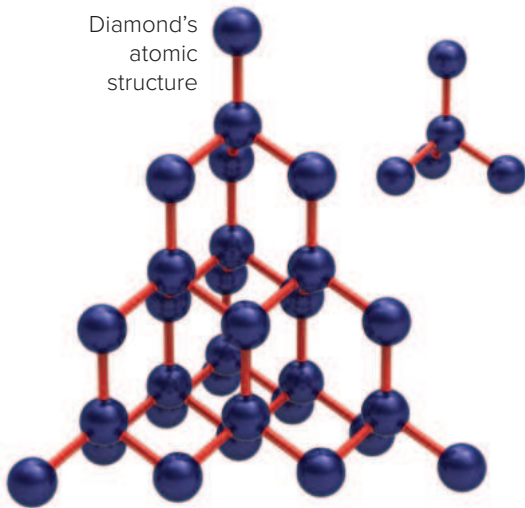


## 9 Writing

- A. Read the information in the **Writing Corner** with your teacher. Then, write the correct passive form (present or past) of the verbs in parentheses to complete the text.

Diamonds are the hardest natural substance on Earth. They \_\_\_\_\_ (1. make) entirely of carbon. Graphite, which \_\_\_\_\_ (2. use) to make pencils, is another material that \_\_\_\_\_ (3. make) entirely of carbon, but it is one of the softest substances. The difference is the molecular structure that \_\_\_\_\_ (4. form) by the bonds between the carbon atoms.

Diamond's atomic structure



Diamonds \_\_\_\_\_ (5. form) under high temperature and pressure deep within Earth's crust. The process can take from one to three billion years. Then the diamonds \_\_\_\_\_ (6. push) gradually to the surface by volcanic activity.

The Cullinan is the world's largest diamond. It \_\_\_\_\_ (7. find) in South Africa in 1905. It weighed 3,106.75 karats (621.35 grams). It \_\_\_\_\_ (8. cut) into 9 large gemstones. The largest of the cut diamonds \_\_\_\_\_ (9. call) the Great Star of Africa and weighs 530.2 karats. The Lesser Star of Africa is 317.4 karats. These diamonds belong to the British Crown, and they are part of one of the world's biggest collections of jewels.

Today, there is a man-made substance that is even harder than diamonds—the nanodiamond or diamond nanorods. The nanodiamond \_\_\_\_\_ (10. produce) by the compression of graphite. It is the hardest substance known to man.

### Writing Corner

Use the passive to emphasize the action and not who or what does it.

- To make the passive, use the verb *be* and a past participle.\*  
**Simple present:** Diamonds **are made** entirely of carbon.  
**Simple past:** The Cullinan diamond **was found** in Africa.
- Use *by* to show the agent (the person or thing that does the action).  
Diamonds are pushed to the surface **by** volcanic activity.  
The pencil was invented **by** an Italian couple named Bernacotti.

\* See page 180 for a list of irregular verbs and past participles.

- B. Write about a place, a person, a thing, or an animal from a book of records. Say why it is the biggest, the best, the most wonderful, etc. Use the passive where possible.

## 10 Project

Do research on an ancient monument in your country. Present your research to the class.



# 11 Form, Meaning and Function

## So...That/Such...That

So and *such* make the meaning of an adjective or adverb stronger.  
*So...that* and *such...that* are used to show cause and effect.

so + adjective/adverb + *that*

He is **so** fast **that** he won the race.  
He ran **so** quickly **that** he won the race.

so + *many* + plural count noun + *that*

He has **so many** books **that** he can hardly carry them.

so + *much* + noncount noun + *that*

I have **so much** homework **that** I can't go out tonight.

*such* + adjective + noun + *that*

It was **such** a difficult test **that** none of the students did well.  
Ali is **such** a smart boy **that** he has the best grades in school.



### A. Complete the sentences with **so** or **such**.

1. Diamonds are \_\_\_\_\_ hard that you can't break them with a hammer.
2. Sharks have \_\_\_\_\_ sensitive hearing that they can hear their prey miles away.
3. It is \_\_\_\_\_ a luxurious hotel that the cheapest suite is \$1,000 per night.
4. He came into the room \_\_\_\_\_ quietly that no one heard him.
5. The leather shoes were \_\_\_\_\_ a bargain that she bought three pairs.
6. Ahmed was \_\_\_\_\_ hungry that he ate three burgers and two sides of fries.

### B. Complete the sentences with **so many** or **so much**.

1. Our neighbors made \_\_\_\_\_ noise that I couldn't sleep last night.
2. There was \_\_\_\_\_ traffic on the road that we arrived late.
3. I have \_\_\_\_\_ books that they don't all fit in my bookcase.
4. He spends \_\_\_\_\_ time working that he rarely sees his friends.
5. There are \_\_\_\_\_ species of animals that it's impossible to count them all.

### C. Combine the sentences with **so...that** or **such...that**.

1. The children were tired after their school trip. They fell asleep on the bus.

2. It was a beautiful day. We decided to go for a drive in the countryside.

3. There were many people in the supermarket. We had to wait in line for half an hour.

4. The World Cup is a popular sporting event. Over a billion viewers watch it on TV.

5. The Arabian Oryx was an endangered species. It was extinct in the wild.



# EXPANSION Units 6–11

## 1 Language Review

A. How good is your memory? Answer the following questions about your past. Write complete sentences.

1. Who was your first-grade teacher? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Who were your best friends in primary school? \_\_\_\_\_
3. What was the first book you read? \_\_\_\_\_
4. When was the last time you ate in a restaurant? What did you eat? \_\_\_\_\_
5. How long ago did you have a haircut? \_\_\_\_\_
6. What did you have for breakfast yesterday? \_\_\_\_\_

B. Write what is wrong with the people in the pictures. Then write what they should or shouldn't do. Follow the example.



 Yahya / dentist



1. Mona / rest



2. the children / junk food




3. Farah / hot tea



4. Ali and Imad / medicine



5. Ahmed / go swimming

 Yahya has a toothache. He should go to the dentist.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_



C. Write answers. Use your own ideas.

1. Why are you so angry?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Why are you surprised?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Why are you relieved?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Why are you sad?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Why are you worried?

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Why do you feel bored?

\_\_\_\_\_

D. Complete the field trip report. Use the past tense of the verbs in parentheses.

## FIELD TRIP REPORT

*Timothy Brown, PE Teacher, Lakeside School*

The junior class \_\_\_\_\_ (1. go) on a field trip to Camp Sunshine during the spring vacation. Unfortunately, we \_\_\_\_\_ (2. have) lots of problems on the trip. First, the bus \_\_\_\_\_ (3. break) down. When we finally \_\_\_\_\_ (4. arrive) at the camp late at night, we \_\_\_\_\_ (5. find) that the cabins \_\_\_\_\_ (6. not have) any heating. We \_\_\_\_\_ (7. be) cold all night, and Steve \_\_\_\_\_ (8. wake up) with a cold. That morning on our hike, Chuck \_\_\_\_\_ (9. eat) some wild berries in the forest and \_\_\_\_\_ (10. get) a stomachache. He \_\_\_\_\_ (11. take) some medicine, but he \_\_\_\_\_ (12. not feel) well after that. On the second day, Dan \_\_\_\_\_ (13. hurt) his knee playing football, and Mitch and Peter \_\_\_\_\_ (14. catch) Steve's cold. On the third day, Hussain \_\_\_\_\_ (15. feel) bad because of a terrible toothache. I \_\_\_\_\_ (16. give) aspirin to all of them. I'm a PE teacher, not a doctor. What do you do when everyone is sick on a trip? We \_\_\_\_\_ (17. pack) our bags and \_\_\_\_\_ (18. come) back home.



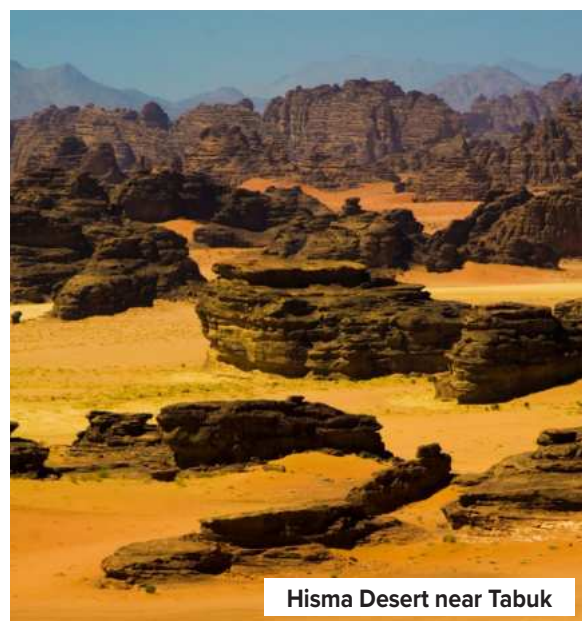


# EXPANSION Units 6–11

E. Use the information in the chart to answer the questions about the three cities. Write complete sentences.

	Dammam	Najran	Tabuk
Population	1,253,000 inhabitants	410,300 inhabitants	657,000 inhabitants
Location	coastal port	mountain oasis	hills, desert plains
Summer temperature	24–43° Celsius	27–39° Celsius	26–40° Celsius
Winter temperature	10–21° Celsius	10–24° Celsius	4–17° Celsius
History	20th century	4,000 B.C.E.	1,500 B.C.E.
Main industries	oil, shipping	agriculture (fruit)	agriculture, military
Universities	four	one	two
Cultural interest	museums, heritage village, public library	palace, museum, archaeological sites, traditional market	archaeological sites, historic mosque, castle
Recreation	large parks, beaches, water sports, sports centers, shopping	parks, sports centers, bowling alley	nature parks, hiking, camping, sand skiing, camel riding

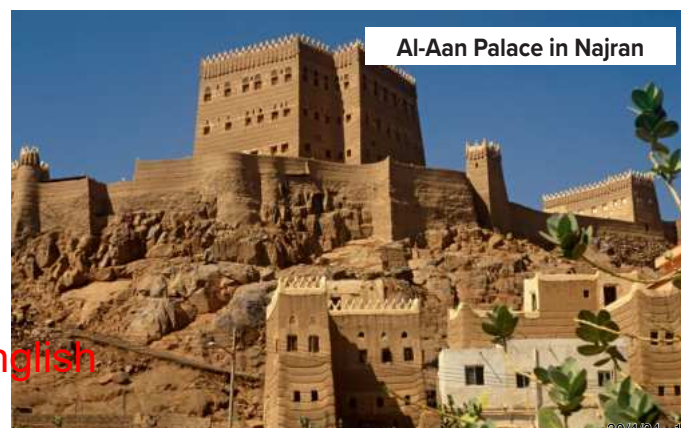
- Which city has the hottest summer weather?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Which city is cooler in the winter, Najran or Tabuk?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Which city do you think is the noisiest?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Which city has the most ancient history?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Which city do you think offers better paying jobs?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Which city probably has fewer college students?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Which do you think is the most interesting town? Why?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Which do you think is the nicest town to live in? Why?  
\_\_\_\_\_



Hisma Desert near Tabuk



Corniche in Dammam



Al-Aan Palace in Najran

@saudienglish

- F. Adnan is on vacation in New York City. Complete his postcard to a friend with the correct verbs.

New York, August 20

Dear Tariq,

I'm (1) \_\_\_\_\_ this postcard in English because I (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to practice the language. New York City is a wonderful city, but it's really hot in August. There (3) \_\_\_\_\_ thousands of tourists here from all over the place. You always (4) \_\_\_\_\_ lots of people on the streets.

Yesterday I (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to the Statue of Liberty. It's very impressive. Tonight I (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to see the lights in Times Square. Tomorrow the other students in the group and I (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to visit the Empire State Building. Some people planned to (8) \_\_\_\_\_ up the 1,860 steps to the top (like in the Eiffel Tower), but you (9) \_\_\_\_\_ do that anymore. You (10) \_\_\_\_\_ to take the elevator.

I'm (11) \_\_\_\_\_ a great time. Wish you were here!

Your friend,  
Adnan



- G. Complete the conversations with the correct possessive pronouns.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <b>A:</b> Whose shoes are these?<br>Are they Dad's?<br><b>B:</b> Yes, they're _____.                    | 3. <b>A:</b> Don't eat that! It isn't _____.<br><b>B:</b> Oh, yes it is. It's _____.<br>Mom gave it to me. |
| 2. <b>A:</b> Is that Mariam's perfume?<br><b>B:</b> No, that isn't _____.<br>Her perfume is in the drawer. | 4. <b>A:</b> Is this your house?<br><b>B:</b> Yes, it's _____.<br>My wife and I bought it last year.       |

- H. Give excuses for the following. Use **have to**. Use your own ideas.

💡 I couldn't come to the park because I had to babysit my little brother.

1. He can't come to the football game because \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I was late to class this morning because \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I didn't do my homework because \_\_\_\_\_.
4. She's not going shopping because \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I didn't call you back because \_\_\_\_\_.





## 2 Reading

### Before Reading

Look at the photos and discuss what you know about the places.

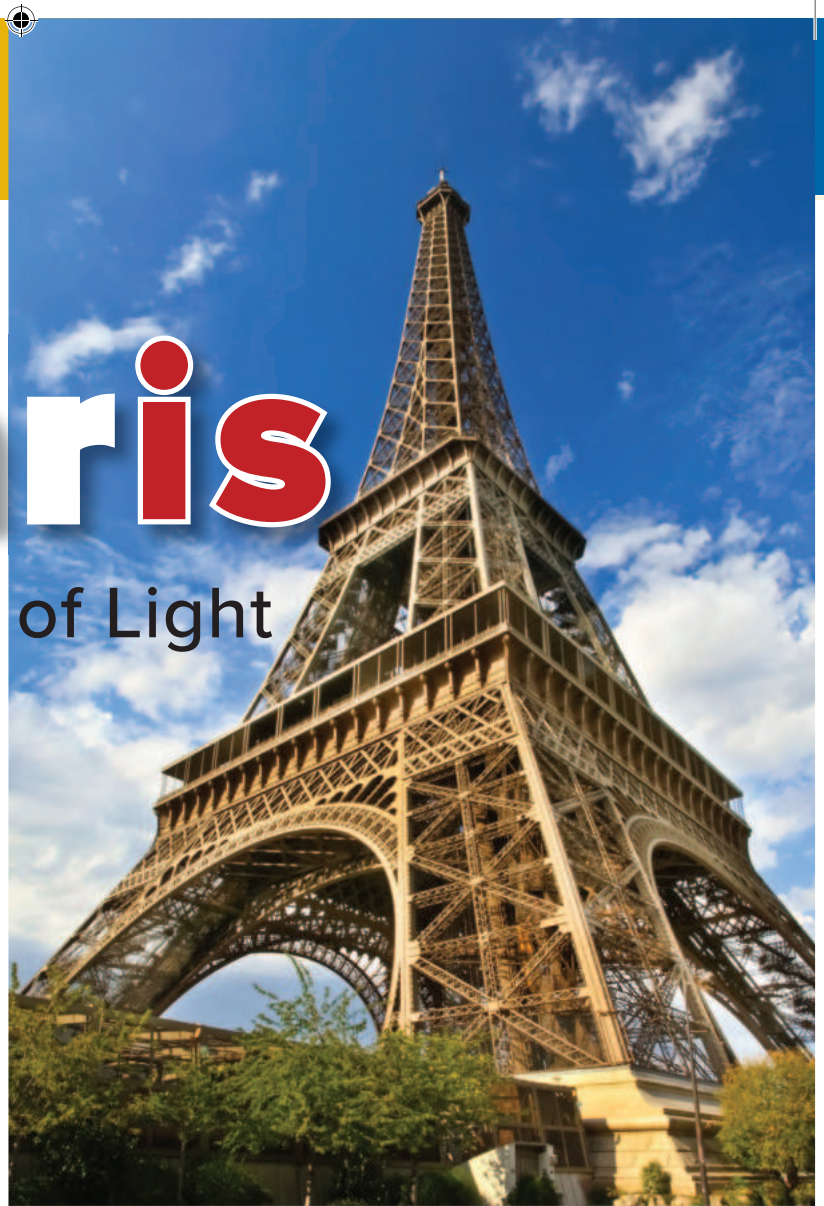
# Paris

### Things to do in Paris

## The City of Light

### Eiffel Tower ▶

The Eiffel Tower is one of the world's most popular and well-known sites. It is named after its architect, Gustave Eiffel, and was built in 1889 for the Universal Exposition. The tower is 1,062 feet (324 meters) high and offers fantastic views of the city. Very often, visitors have to wait in line to take the elevator to the observation deck. But the wait is worth it. At night, the tower itself becomes a beautifully illuminated sculpture. The Eiffel Tower is the most-visited building in the world. It welcomes around 7 million visitors per year.



### ◀ The Louvre

The Louvre was originally a royal palace. In 1516, Leonardo da Vinci came to France as a painter for the Royal Court, and brought with him the painting of Mona Lisa. The king acquired it, and it became part of the royal collection. Today the painting stands in the Louvre in a climate-controlled enclosure behind bulletproof glass. In the 1600s, the Louvre was a palace that contained art and rich decorations, and it only opened as a museum in 1793. The renovation of the museum in 1981 made it even more beautiful, and a pyramid was built as an entrance. Today, the Louvre is the world's largest museum and possesses the world's largest and richest collection of art and antiques from around the world.





## Arc de Triomphe and the Champs Elysées

The Arc de Triomphe is a magnificent site at the end of the Champs Elysées, and one of the most famous monuments of Paris. Napoleon I ordered the construction of the monument in 1806 to celebrate his conquests. He got the idea from the triumphal arches of the emperors in ancient Rome. The Arc de Triomphe is a landmark in Paris because of its size and beauty.

From the Arc de Triomphe, you can enjoy a walk along the Champs Elysées. There are many shops, restaurants, and cafés along this boulevard. Be sure you stop off at a crêpe stand on one of the side streets. The chocolate crêpes are absolutely wonderful!



## Seine River Tours

Boat tours along the Seine run throughout the day and evening. Many include lunch or dinner. The boats depart from the Pont de l'Alma (on the Right Bank) or from the foot of the Eiffel Tower (on the Left Bank). You can see many attractions on the trip, such as the Île de la Cité in the middle of the river as well as some of Paris's famous bridges.

## After Reading

Answer **yes** or **no**.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Leonardo da Vinci brought a painting with him to France.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The Louvre Museum is famous for its views of Paris.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The Eiffel Tower is the most popular tourist sight in the world.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The Arc de Triomphe is famous because it has Napoleon's tomb.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The Île de la Cité is an island in the middle of the Seine River.

## Discussion

1. You and a friend are going on vacation to Paris. Discuss what you're going to do there. Tell the class about it.
2. Compare Paris to other cities you know. Which city is best to visit? Why?

## 3 Project



Research some tourist sites in your country and make a presentation to the class.

4 Chant Along



# The (Right) Answer



What do you do when you feel lonely?  
What do you do when you feel blue?  
Just come around and listen to me.  
I've got the right answers for you.

## Chorus

A little bit of hope is what you need—  
A little bit of fun and lots of care,  
A friendly person you can talk to,  
A helping hand when no one's there.

What should you do in times of trouble?  
What should you do when you are sad?  
Why don't you bring me all your worries?  
I'm sure that things can't be so bad.

## Chorus

What can I do to make you happy?  
What can I do to ease your pain?  
What can I do to cheer you up,  
And see you smiling once again?

## Chorus



## Vocabulary

A. Put the following words into one of the two categories.

lonely, blue, fun, hope, care, friendly, trouble, sad, worries, bad, happy, pain, smiling

Positive (+)	Negative (-)

B. Find two positive expressions and two negative expressions in the chant. Write them in the blanks.

💡 (+) *to ease your pain*                      (-) *to feel blue*

1. (+) \_\_\_\_\_
2. (+) \_\_\_\_\_
3. (-) \_\_\_\_\_
4. (-) \_\_\_\_\_

## Comprehension

A. Answer the questions.

1. How is the boy feeling?
2. What can his friend do to help him?
3. Do you think the friend has the right answers?

B. Write two sentences that show that the friend is trying to help.

💡 *I've got the right answers for you.*  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

## Discussion

1. What do you do when you feel sad?
2. Who do you normally discuss your problems with?
3. Who can you ask for advice?
4. What kind of advice do you give your friends?
5. Think of another title for the chant.





# 12 It's Going to Be Fun!

رابطہ المدرس الرقمي



www.ien.edu.sa

## 1 Listen and Discuss

What kind of vacation do you prefer?  
Check the adjectives and discuss with a partner.

- |                                      |   |                                   |
|--------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> peaceful    | <input type="checkbox"/> popular            | <input type="checkbox"/> quiet    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> safe        | <input type="checkbox"/> exciting/thrilling | <input type="checkbox"/> exotic   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> inexpensive | <input type="checkbox"/> adventurous        | <input type="checkbox"/> noisy    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> unusual     | <input type="checkbox"/> luxurious          | <input type="checkbox"/> relaxing |

### SOME VACATION FAVORITES

#### SCUBA DIVING IN THE RED SEA, SAUDI ARABIA

Dive in the peaceful coral reefs of the Red Sea. You're going to see some of the most awesome and colorful marine life! Come face to face with sea turtles, lionfish, manta rays, and dolphins.

#### CULTURAL TRIP TO DUBAI

You're going to experience the old and the new: traditional markets, modern architecture, and malls. Visit museums, art galleries, and theme parks. Taste Arabian cuisine and ethnic dishes from India, Japan, or Italy.

#### TREKKING IN OMAN

Follow the Frankincense Trail from Muscat to Salalah and learn the secrets of the ancient perfume. You're going to visit a desert oasis and see spectacular views of mountains, coastal villages, and archaeological sites.

## GLOBAL TOURS

has the  
VACATION FOR YOU!



We take you anywhere in the world.  
What are you going to do on your vacation?  
Are you going to travel around or just relax in one place?  
We have the answer for you.  
Call Global Tours!  
Visit our website:  
[www.globaltours.net](http://www.globaltours.net)  
You're going to have the time of your life!





### SAFARI IN AFRICA

Have an exciting adventure on Tanzania's Serengeti Plain. See the herds of wildebeest, different kinds of bucks and gazelles, zebra, and other wildlife in their natural habitat in the N'gorongoro Crater. You're going to see them really up close!



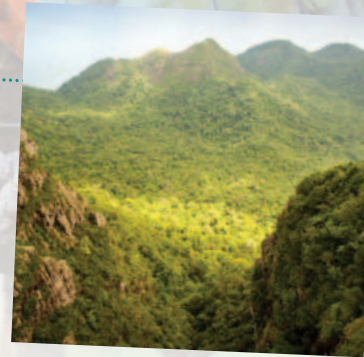
### DESERT TOUR, JORDAN

Visit the spectacular ancient city of Petra. You're going to explore this magnificent archaeological site and see the wonderful buildings and tombs carved out in the rock.



### ECOTOURISM IN THE MALAYSIAN RAINFOREST



Hike through the rainforest at Kinabalu Park and learn about one of the world's unique ecosystems. You're going to come into contact with thousands of different species of plants and animals, including an amazing variety of orchids.



### Quick Check ✓

- A. Vocabulary.** List the adjectives used in the brochure.
- B. Comprehension.** Answer the questions about the brochure.
1. What does Global Tours offer?
  2. What can you do in the Red Sea?
  3. What are visitors going to see in Petra?
  4. What kind of vacation are you going to have in Malaysia?

## 2 Pair Work

- A. Ask** and **answer** about the places.
-  What's the Serengeti like?
-  It's exciting. You can see wildlife in their natural habitat.
- B.** Choose one of the vacations. Ask and answer about the trip.
1. Where are you going to go on your vacation?
  2. How long are you going to stay?
  3. Who are you going with?
  4. How are you going to go?

# 12 It's Going to Be Fun!



## 3 Grammar

### Future with *Be Going To*

Use *be going to* for the future, to talk about plans.

#### Affirmative (+)

I'm **going to** travel to Jordan.

#### Negative (-)

I'm **not going to** visit Petra.

#### Yes-No Questions (?)

Are you **going to** travel to Jordan?

#### Short Answer (+)

Yes, I am.

#### Short Answer (-)

No, I'm not.

### Information Questions

**What** are you going to do on your vacation?

I'm going to travel to Africa.

**When** is he going to leave?

He's going to leave next week.

**Which** countries is he going to visit?

He's going to visit Tunisia and Morocco.

**How** are we going to go?

We're going to go by plane.

**Where** am I going to stay?

You're going to stay in a four-star hotel.

**Who** is going to travel with them?

They're going to travel with friends.

**How long** are they going to stay?

They're going to stay for a month.


### Position of Adjectives

Antarctica is an **exotic** place. (*before nouns*)    Antarctica is **exotic**. (*after the verb be*)

A. Add the question words. Match the questions and the answers.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Which</u> suitcase are you going to take? <u>e</u> | a. In a beautiful hotel.                  |
| 2. _____ are they going to travel? ____                  | b. To their parents.                      |
| 3. _____ is he going to do when he arrives? ____         | c. They're going to take a bus.           |
| 4. _____ are they going to write to? ____                | d. You're going to arrive in the morning. |
| 5. _____ are we going to stay? ____                      | e. The red one. It's new.                 |
| 6. _____ are we going to get there? ____                 | f. He's going to rest.                    |

B. Hameed and Fadi are going on vacation. Choose a place, and write six sentences about the things they're going to need. Use the words in the box for ideas.

 *They're going to Bali, Indonesia. They're going to need hats, sunglasses, etc.*

backpack	jacket	sneakers
bathing suit	jeans	suit and tie
calculator	map	sunglasses
camera	medicine	travel books
coat	money	T-shirt
credit card	passport	visa
hat	shirt	wallet
hiking boots	shorts	watch





C. Complete the article. Use the adjectives in the box.

humid	dense	traditional	tropical	ancient	agricultural
coastal	unique	hospitable	local	fertile	interesting

## Jazan

Jazan, in southwestern Saudi Arabia, is a (1) \_\_\_\_\_ city on the Red Sea. It is the capital city of Jazan Province. Although it is a small province, it has a (2) \_\_\_\_\_ population of about 1.4 million inhabitants. The terrain of the region is varied, consisting of mountains, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ plains, coasts, and islands. Jazan is famous for its (4) \_\_\_\_\_ products, especially its (5) \_\_\_\_\_ fruits like mango, figs, and papaya. The climate in the city of Jazan is very hot and (6) \_\_\_\_\_ in the summer, while temperatures in the mountains to the northeast are much cooler.



Jazan is one of the oldest regions in the country, dating back some 8,000 years, and is rich in heritage and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ monuments. There is an (8) \_\_\_\_\_ mix of architectural styles throughout the region. The buildings are in harmony with their environment and make use of (9) \_\_\_\_\_ materials, such as stone, mud, bricks, wood, and plants. One style that is (10) \_\_\_\_\_ to the Tihama coast is the Jazani hut. The region is also known for its (11) \_\_\_\_\_ handicrafts and its generous and (12) \_\_\_\_\_ people.

## 4 Listening

Listen to three people talking about their vacation plans. Mark the boxes.

	Andy	Rod	Sam
1. Who is going to travel to another country?			
2. Who is going to climb a mountain?			
3. Who is going to fish?			
4. Who is going to help on a farm?			
5. Who is going to ski?			
6. Who is going to see wild animals?			

## 5 Pronunciation

Listen. Note the difference in the two sounds. Then practice.

/æ/
travel
glasses
jacket
/ɒ/
exotic
popular
modern

# 12 It's Going to Be Fun!

رابطه الدرس الرقمي



www.iem.edu.sa

## 6 Conversation

- Agent:** What kind of vacation are you looking for?
- Omar:** I'm looking for a vacation in an exotic and exciting place. I love to meet people and learn about new cultures.
- Agent:** How about India?
- Omar:** It's a bit too crowded, and Indian food is not my favorite food.
- Agent:** Do you like nature? We have ecological tours in the Costa Rican rainforest. You can stay in a treetop resort. It's a unique jungle experience. You're going to love it.
- Omar:** I'm allergic to mosquitoes.
- Agent:** Why don't you go to the Alps? You will experience French, Swiss, Italian, and German cultures.
- Omar:** *Actually*, I want a place that isn't full of tourists. Somewhere *off the beaten track*.



### Real Talk

*Actually* = used to introduce an opposing idea  
*off the beaten track* = not visited by many tourists

## Your Ending

What does the travel agent say in response to Omar's last statement?

- 1 Why don't you go to New Zealand?
- 2 How about Antarctica? There are no mosquitoes there.
- 3 Why don't you go to the Arabian Desert?
- 4 Your idea: \_\_\_\_\_

## About the Conversation

1. Why doesn't Omar want to go to India?
2. What's wrong with Costa Rica?
3. What kind of place is Omar looking for?

## Your Turn

Your partner tells you what he/she likes to do on a vacation. You make suggestions for where he/she can go. Your partner agrees or disagrees with your suggestion and says why.

## 7 About You

1. What's your favorite kind of vacation?
2. What do you like to do on a vacation?
3. How often do you take a vacation?
4. What are you going to do on your next vacation?





## 8 Reading

### Before Reading

With a partner, write down what you know about Al-Hijr.

# THE STONES OF AL-ULA



**To:** qassim\_n@space.net  
**Subject:** School trip to Al-Ula

Hi Qassim,

I'm writing this email from our hotel in Al-Ula. We arrived this evening after a long bus journey from Madinah. It's really too bad you couldn't join us on our school trip. We're going to learn so much about the historical sites that we can't learn in books.

It's quite busy here in town, with tourists from all over the world who have come to visit Mada'in Saleh. Tomorrow a guide is going to show us around the site. We're also going to visit the museum, Al-Ula oasis, and the old abandoned city.

The archaeological site lies about 20 km north of the town. It's also known as Al-Hijr because of the spectacular rock formations in the area. As you know, the site was settled by the Nabataeans in the first century. There are over 100 rock-carved monuments that are spread over an area of 13.4 kilometers, and due to the dry climate, they are in an excellent state of preservation. The site was included in UNESCO's World Heritage List in 2008 because of its cultural and architectural importance.

The desert around the oasis is covered by natural rock formations. Hundreds of curious shapes were carved by the wind into the soft sandstone, one of which resembles a giant elephant! The old city of Al-Deerah is going to be very interesting. It has over 500 houses from the 13th century, with stone foundations and mud-brick walls. Some of the stones were taken from the ruins of a Lihyanite settlement and still carry the ancient inscriptions. There is also a unique sundial that the inhabitants used to determine the start of Ramadan.

Don't worry. I'll take lots of amazing pictures to show you!

Best wishes,  
 Adel



**FYI** Lihyan was an ancient civilization in northwestern Arabia that existed about 2,500 years ago.

### After Reading

Mark the things that Adel is going to do in Al-Ula.

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> ride an elephant | 3. <input type="checkbox"/> see amazing scenery | 5. <input type="checkbox"/> go to a museum  |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> go rock climbing | 4. <input type="checkbox"/> visit tombs         | 6. <input type="checkbox"/> carve sandstone |



# 12 It's Going to Be Fun!



## 9 Writing

A. Read the email. Circle the adjectives. Underline the adverbs.

**From:** khalid\_2001@sgmail.com  
**Subject:** Greek island

Hi Saeed,

I hope you're well. I'm writing from the Greek island of Paros. You know how I always wanted to visit Greece. Well, I'm finally here. It's a dream come true!


First, we flew to Athens. We spent a wonderful day there visiting the Parthenon and the Acropolis Museum. Amazing! The next day, we went to the port of Piraeus and caught a high-speed ferry to the island. The voyage took less than 3 hours.

We're staying in a comfortable hotel in the capital, Parikia. It's a very picturesque town, with its narrow streets and traditional white houses that have blue doors and windows. In the evening, the stores, cafés, and restaurants are crowded with tourists. It's so lively, and I have to say Greek food is absolutely delicious!

Of course, the island has many scenic beaches with crystal clear waters and soft sand. Tomorrow, we're going to spend the day at Golden Beach. I'm really excited because I'm going to try windsurfing! Apart from the spectacular beaches, we plan to explore the unique sights of the island. We're going to visit the Archaeological Museum and the Valley of Butterflies.

I'll tell you more about my adventures in Paros soon. Write me back with your news.

Best wishes,  
Khalid



B. Read the writing task in C. Before you write, complete the chart with notes for each paragraph.

Greetings	
Describe the journey	
Describe the place	
Activities you plan do	
Closing	

C. Write an email to a friend from a place that you know or would like to visit. Use your notes from the chart and ideas from this unit.

## 10 Project

In a group, plan a picnic. Present your picnic plan to the class. Use pictures and brochures.



# 11 Form, Meaning and Function

## Adverbs of Manner

Adverbs of manner are formed by adding *-ly* to an adjective. They express how something is done. Adverbs of manner usually go after the main verb or after the object of the main verb.

He drives **slowly**. He is reading the map **carefully**.

Adjectives that end in *-l*, double the *l*: careful → **carefully**

Adjectives that end in consonant *-y*, change *y* to *i*: easy → **easily**

**Note:** Some adjectives and adverbs have the same form:


He's a **fast** driver. He drives **fast**. We ate a **late** dinner. We ate dinner **late**.  
He's a **hard** worker. He works **hard**. The mountain is **high**. They climbed **high**.



**Note:** The adverb form of *good* is *well* and the comparative form is *better*.

He's a **good** player. He plays **well**. He plays **better** than he did last year.

**A.** Rewrite the sentences. Use adverbs of manner.

-  Adel is a careful driver. Adel drives carefully.
- 1. Hameed has a loud laugh. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. We always eat an early dinner. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. Fadwa and Amal are slow readers. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. Saeed is a good tennis player. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. Sabah is a quiet speaker. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6. Is Khalid a hard worker? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7. Majid and Ali are fast runners. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8. Learning English is easy for him. \_\_\_\_\_
- 9. Is my writing better now? \_\_\_\_\_
- 10. He jumped over the high wall. \_\_\_\_\_

**B.** Complete the conversation. Use adverb forms of the adjectives in parentheses. Then practice the conversation with a partner.

- A:** How was your vacation in Norway?  
**B:** It didn't start \_\_\_\_\_ (1. good) because my flight left \_\_\_\_\_ (2. late). The plane shook \_\_\_\_\_ (3. wild), so I was happy when it landed \_\_\_\_\_ (4. safe) at the airport.  
**A:** Wasn't it cold there?  
**B:** Yes, but I dressed \_\_\_\_\_ (5. warm).  
**A:** So, did you go skiing?  
**B:** Of course! I took lessons on the first day. I learned \_\_\_\_\_ (6. quick) and \_\_\_\_\_ (7. easy). Then, I spent the week skiing \_\_\_\_\_ (8. fast) down the hills.  
**A:** What did you do in the evenings?  
**B:** I sat \_\_\_\_\_ (9. comfortable) by the fire and watched the snow fall \_\_\_\_\_ (10. peaceful) outside.



# 13 What's the Weather Like?



## 1 Listen and Discuss

Which of these cities has weather most like yours?

## Weather Around the World

Summer is usually sunny, really hot, and very dry. Temperatures are often over 104 degrees Fahrenheit (40 degrees Celsius), and 54 percent humidity.

### Chicago, U.S.A.



It gets very cold in winter, and it often snows. Chicago gets approximately 40 inches of snow (100 centimeters) per year. Temperatures often fall below zero Celsius, and even below zero Fahrenheit.

### Jeddah, KSA



### Montreal, Canada



The weather in the fall can be unpredictable, from cool to cold. It's often windy and cloudy, and temperatures vary from 40 to 58 degrees Fahrenheit (5 to 15 degrees Celsius).

### Kyoto, Japan



Spring is usually cool, but some days can be quite warm. The average temperature is around 52 degrees Fahrenheit (11.2 degrees Celsius).

## People's Plans

Adnan



"I won't stay in Jeddah in July and August. It's extremely hot. I'll probably visit my cousins in Abha and enjoy the mountains."

"I think I'll go camping in the fall. It's when trees begin to lose their leaves and offer a magnificent display of colors."

Henry



Wayne



"I'll probably go ice-skating or skiing this winter. Maybe I'll visit my family in Florida and get away from the cold."

"I'll go and see the cherry blossoms. Spring in Kyoto is absolutely breathtaking. It's my favorite season."

Tomi







It's hurricane season. Hurricane George will pass over the Gulf of Mexico, but will not cause any damage. It won't hit Mexico, but will stay over the gulf.

## The Weather Forecast

It'll rain in Central America tomorrow. It may also rain in the Yucatan Peninsula in Mexico. Florida will be cloudy. The temperature will be around 86 degrees Fahrenheit—that's 30 degrees Celsius—in Miami.

### weather symbols



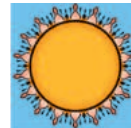
rainy



snowy



cloudy



sunny



partly cloudy/  
partly sunny



windy

### Quick Check ✓

- A. Vocabulary.** Write the words from these pages that relate to temperature.
- B. Comprehension.** Answer the questions.
1. Which city has hot summers?
  2. What's the temperature in Chicago in the winter?
  3. What will Tomi see in the spring in Kyoto?
  4. What is attractive about Canada in the fall?
  5. What will tomorrow's weather be like in Miami?

## 2 Pair Work

- A. Ask** and **answer** about the pictures and the people.
- What's the weather like in Kyoto in the spring?
  - It's usually cool.
  - What will Adnan do in the summer?
  - He'll probably go to the mountains.
- B. Ask** and **answer** about places and plans.
- What will you do in the summer?
  - I'll probably visit my family in Abha.



# 13 What's the Weather Like?



## 3 Grammar

### Future with Will

**FYI** won't = will not

Use *will* to talk about something that you think will or will not happen in the future.

#### Affirmative (+)

I'll		(I + will)
You'll		(you + will)
He'll		(he + will)
She'll	<b>travel.</b>	(she + will)
It'll		(it + will)
We'll		(we + will)
They'll		(they + will)

#### Negative (-)

I			
You			
He			
She	<b>won't</b>	<b>travel.</b>	
It			
We			
They			

#### Yes-No Question (?)

Will you travel next summer?

#### Short Answer (+)

Yes, I **will**.

#### Short Answer (-)

No, I **won't**.

### Information Questions

**What** will you do in the summer? I'll probably travel.

**Where** will you go? I'll go to Jordan.

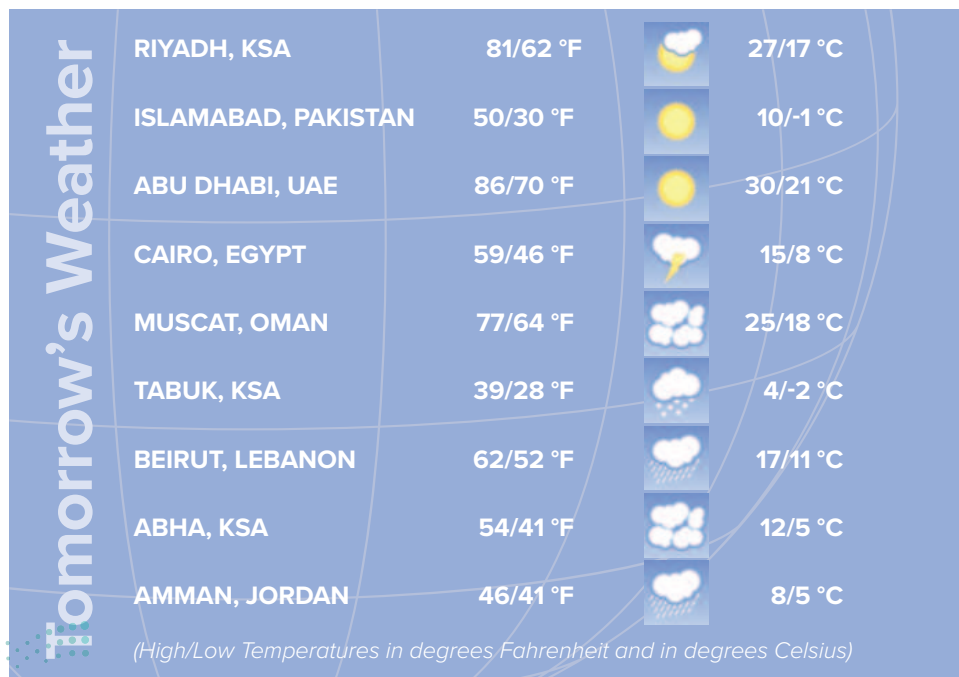
**How** will you go? Maybe I'll drive.

**Note:** We often use *will* with *probably* or *maybe* to express doubt or uncertainty.

**A.** Ask and answer about the weather.

**A:** What will the weather be like in Muscat tomorrow?

**B:** It'll be warm and cloudy. The temperature will be 25 degrees Celsius.





B. Ask and answer questions about your plans for the various times in the box.

- in the summer
- in the winter
- in the spring
- in the fall
- tomorrow
- on the weekend
- next week
- next year
- on Saturday
- in the future

A: What will you probably do in the summer?  
 B: I'll probably go horseback riding in Najran.



## 4 Listening

Listen to the weather report. Answer **yes** or **no**.

1. \_\_\_ The weather was fine on Thursday afternoon.
2. \_\_\_ Temperatures will be in the sixties on Friday afternoon.
3. \_\_\_ Saturday will be beautiful and sunny all day.
4. \_\_\_ It usually rains in the spring.
5. \_\_\_ It will probably snow on Saturday.
6. \_\_\_ You won't need boots and jackets in the mountains.



A barometer measures changes in atmospheric pressure and helps to predict whether it will be wet or dry.

## 5 Pronunciation

Listen to the /I/ sound. Then practice.

/I/			
I'll	I'll meet you at seven.	she'll	She'll go shopping next week.
you'll	You'll get cold.	we'll	We'll have fun on the trip.
he'll	He'll travel in the summer.	they'll	They'll probably stay home.



# 13 What's the Weather Like?

رابط الدرس الرقمي



www.iem.edu.sa

## 6 Conversation

- Tariq:** So, I hear you're going to move to Abha.
- Adel:** Yeah. I got a great job there.
- Tariq:** What work will you do?
- Adel:** I'm going to be a trainee in an international hotel.
- Tariq:** When do you plan to move?
- Adel:** I'll probably go next month. I want to spend the rest of the summer with my family before I move away.
- Tariq:** How long will you stay?
- Adel:** It depends.
- Tariq:** Depends on what?



### Your Ending

What is Adel's answer?

- 1 It depends on the salary there. Will I make enough money?
- 2 It depends on the weather. Will I like the cold winters?
- 3 It depends on the training. Will I learn enough to help my career?
- 4 Your idea: \_\_\_\_\_

### Real Talk

- I hear** = a way to introduce news
- It depends.** = a way to say you are not certain

### About the Conversation

1. When will Adel go to Abha?
2. What is he going to do there?
3. Why isn't he going immediately?
4. How long will he stay?

### Your Turn

Imagine you are moving to a different country or city. Discuss what you will miss from your current home. Also discuss the things you will do and won't do in your new home.

## 7 About You

1. What's your favorite season of the year? Why?
2. What will you do next year?
3. What subjects will you study next year?
4. What will you probably do after high school or college?





## 8 Reading

### Before Reading

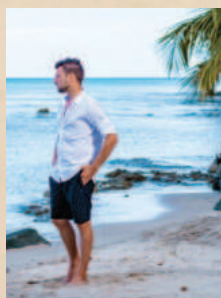
Does the weather change the way you feel? How?

### Can Weather Affect People's Moods?

Do you think it will rain tomorrow? Will it be cool or warm? People often ask about the weather because they want to wear appropriate clothing. But the weather can mean more to people than just changes in clothing. According to new research, warm, sunny weather can have a positive impact on mental health and mood. On the other hand, cold, dark winter weather can have a negative effect, even causing Seasonal Affective Disorder (SAD), a depression that comes back every winter. Read people's answers to a survey about how the weather affects their moods.



I can't really tell if the weather affects people's moods. In my country, it's always hot. In the winter, the temperature is about 84 degrees Fahrenheit (29 degrees Celsius). We usually have bright, sunny skies, and the people here are normally very happy even during thunderstorms. Maybe one day I'll get to see the snow and see if the cold weather will change my mood. *Ibrahim – Jeddah, Saudi Arabia*



I live on an island that has about two hundred beaches. So the weather affects the way I feel and our way of life very much. I'm in a lively mood the whole year round. People think that my country is tropical, but in the south we sometimes get some really cold, windy days, and I feel down. However, they don't last very long. When that happens, I just try to tell myself not to worry because tomorrow or the day after will be beautiful and sunny again. *Felipe – Florianopolis, Brazil*



The weather definitely affects the way I feel. When it's rainy and dreary out, I feel tired and depressed, and I don't want to do anything outdoors. So I try not to look out of the window, and I spend my time like a typical couch potato, watching TV and eating, or playing video games. My body and my brain seem to function better when it's sunny. I'm more energetic, and I feel like exercising more frequently. The trouble is that it rains on about one day out of three in England. *Keith – Liverpool, England*

### After Reading

Complete the chart. List the effects of the weather on the three people.

	Good Weather	Bad Weather
Ibrahim		
Felipe		
Keith		



# 13 What's the Weather Like?



## 9 Writing

A. Look at the pairs of synonyms. Which adjectives describe moods? Which describe weather? Complete each sentence with one suitable adjective from the boxes.

sleepy/tired miserable/depressed bored/indifferent energetic/lively happy/cheerful

dreary/gloomy pleasant/mild extreme/harsh cold/freezing hot/boiling



1. Please, turn up the heat. It's \_\_\_\_\_ in here.
2. Fahad went to bed late last night, so he feels \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Because Noura was not interested in the conversation, she felt \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Ahmed was so \_\_\_\_\_ when his team lost the championship.
5. I always smile when I'm in a \_\_\_\_\_ mood.
6. Camels can survive in the \_\_\_\_\_ conditions of the desert.
7. A healthy diet and an active lifestyle will make you feel more \_\_\_\_\_.
8. It's \_\_\_\_\_ in here. Can we turn on the air conditioner?
9. The weather in spring is usually \_\_\_\_\_, not too cold or too hot.
10. This morning was wet and \_\_\_\_\_, but the sun has finally come out.

### Writing Corner

1. Use *if* or *when* to refer to repeated situations.  
**If / When** it rains, I usually stay indoors.  
 I feel miserable **when / if** it rains all day.
2. Use *when* to refer to future situations that are certain.  
 I will call you **when** I get home.
3. Use *if* to refer to future situations that are possible, but not certain.  
**If** I get home early, I will call you.

B. Write notes in the chart to describe the activities you do and how you feel in certain weather conditions.

Warm and sunny	
Cloudy and rainy	
Hot and dry	
Other: _____	

C. Write about how the weather affects you. Use your notes from the chart and ideas from this unit. Use *if* and *when*.

## 10 Project

Research the weather in a place you would like to visit. Present your findings to the class.



# 11 Form, Meaning and Function

## Conditional Sentences with Present and Future Forms

You can use conditional sentences with *if* to talk about causes and results.

### Present Facts

Use the simple present tense in both clauses.

- If it **is** sunny outside, I always **wear** sunglasses.
- Water **becomes** ice **if** you **put** it in the freezer.

### Future Facts

Use the simple present in the *if*-clause and the future with *will* in the result clause.

- If their team **wins**, the fans **will be** happy.
- The fans **won't be** happy **if** their team **loses**.
- They **won't play** tennis **if** it **rains**.
- If it **doesn't rain**, they'll **play** tennis.
- Will** they **play** tennis **if** it **rains**?



### May/Might

Use *may/might* in the result clause to suggest something is possible, but not certain.

- If Noura **doesn't study**, she **might fail** the test.
- We **might go** skiing **if** there **is** enough snow.

### A. Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Use the simple present or **will**.

1. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (heat) water to 100 degrees Celsius, it \_\_\_\_\_ (boil).
2. Imad \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) late tonight if he \_\_\_\_\_ (not finish) his work on time.
3. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to university, what \_\_\_\_\_ (you / study)?
4. The cell phone \_\_\_\_\_ (not work) if it \_\_\_\_\_ (not have) a battery.
5. If the temperature \_\_\_\_\_ (warm up), the snow \_\_\_\_\_ (melt).
6. If he \_\_\_\_\_ (not hurry), he \_\_\_\_\_ (miss) the bus and be late for school.
7. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (not know) a word, I \_\_\_\_\_ (look) in my dictionary.
8. It \_\_\_\_\_ (get) dark if the sun \_\_\_\_\_ (go) down.



### B. Complete the sentences with the present or future forms of the conditional.

Say how the weather makes you feel.

1. If the sky is dark and cloudy, \_\_\_\_\_.
2. If it's warm and sunny, \_\_\_\_\_.
3. If it's hot and humid, \_\_\_\_\_.

Say what you **will** or **won't** do or what you **may/might** do.

4. If I finish all my homework, \_\_\_\_\_.
5. If I go to university, \_\_\_\_\_.
6. If it rains tomorrow, \_\_\_\_\_.
7. If the weather is nice this weekend, \_\_\_\_\_.
8. If the temperature is above 40°C, \_\_\_\_\_.



# 14 Could You Do Me a Favor?



## 1 Listen and Discuss

What is the same and what is different between this family gathering and the gatherings your family normally has?











## Quick Check

- A. Vocabulary.** Read the conversations. Mark **O** for offers (when people offer help) and **R** for requests (when people ask for help).
- B. Comprehension.** Answer about the picture.
1. What does the boy with the camera want?
  2. What kind of drink would the old man like to have?
  3. What does the girl ask Sarah to bring from the kitchen?
  4. What does the boy offer to do for the woman with the cake?
  5. What do the boys with the video camera want?

## 2 Pair Work

- A.** Imagine you are at the family gathering. Make requests.
-  Will you lend me your camera?
  -  Sure. / Certainly.  
OR: Sorry, I can't.
- B.** Imagine you are at the family gathering. Offer to do things.
-  I'll get some more snacks.
  -  Thanks.



# 14 Could You Do Me a Favor?



## 3 Grammar

### Can, Could, Will, Would

Use *can, could, will, or would* for requests.

#### Request

Can	you	help me?
Could		
Will		
Would		

#### Agreeing

Sure.  
 Certainly.  
 Of course.  
 No problem.

#### Refusing

Sorry. I can't.  
 Not now. I'm busy.

### I'll, Let me

Use *I'll* or *Let me* when offering to do something.

#### Offering

I'll	carry that for you.
Let me	

#### Accepting

Thank you.  
 You're very kind.

#### Refusing

That's all right.  
 Don't worry.

### Want + Object Noun/Pronoun + Infinitive

Use *want + object noun/pronoun + infinitive* to get people to do something.

**Q:** What do you **want Omar to do**?

**A:** I **want him to take out** the garbage.

### Tell and Ask + Object Noun/Pronoun + Infinitive

**Ask Amina to bring** some snacks.

**Tell her not to be** late.

#### A. Write requests for the situations.

 This bag is really heavy. I can't carry it.

*Could you help me with this bag?*

1. We want to take a photo. We don't have a camera.
2. I'm thirsty. I want something to drink.
3. We want to play, but we don't have a ball.
4. I need to call a friend, but I don't have a phone.
5. I don't know which bus goes downtown.

---



---



---



---



---

#### B. Make offers for the situations.

 There are a lot of plates in the kitchen sink.

*I'll wash them for you.*

1. Your mother is trying to get a can from the top shelf.
2. A friend doesn't know how to do a math assignment.
3. Some people want someone to take their photo.
4. A friend needs to cook a steak, but doesn't know how.
5. Someone is carrying a heavy bag.

---



---



---



---



---



www.ien.edu.sa



mother / her son

Could you please take out the garbage?

C. Describe the situations in which people are making requests. Use **want to**.

💡 *The mother wants her son to take out the garbage.*

Please lend me \$10.



1. Rana / Sabah

Could you fill in this form?



2. the receptionist / Saeed

Can I borrow your cell phone?



3. Mr. Jenkins / Andy

Will you give me a hand?



4. Ricardo / Matt

Please put away your toys.



5. mother / her children

Would you pass me the salt?



6. Khalid / his wife

D. Practice with a partner. Accept or refuse the above requests.

## 4 Listening

Listen to the messages from Jason's telephone answering machine. Match each person with his message.

- |                |   |
|----------------|---|
| 1. ___ Jim     | a. This person wants Jason to pick him up at 8:00 A.M.          |
| 2. ___ Andy    | b. This person asks to borrow Jason's brother's volleyball net. |
| 3. ___ John    | c. This person tells Jason to bring a mask and flippers.        |
| 4. ___ Charles | d. This person asks Jason to bring snacks.                      |

## 5 Pronunciation

Listen. Note the reduction of **could you** and **would you**. Then practice.

Could you?	Would you?
Could you give me some rice?	Would you help me?
Could you turn off the light?	Would you pass me the salt?



## 6 Conversation

**Panel 1:** Sultan, will you do me a favor? Sure. What do you want me to do? If Fahd calls, tell him I'm not home. He always wants help with his homework.

**Panel 2:** OK. No problem. Hello. This is Fahd. May I speak to Ali?

**Panel 3:** Hi, Fahd. My brother's not here. I have no idea. Did you try his cell phone? Yes, I did. But he doesn't answer. Can I take a message?

**Panel 4:** Ah, that's too bad! What time will he be back? Yes. Please tell him I got free tickets for the football game tonight.

### Your Ending

What does Sultan say?

- 1 Could I come with you in his place?
- 2 I'll tell Ali to call you when he gets home.
- 3 Can you get me a free ticket too?
- 4 Your idea: \_\_\_\_\_

### About the Conversation

1. What does Ali want Sultan to do?
2. What is Fahd calling about?
3. What does he want Sultan to do?

### Your Turn

Role-play a conversation. Practice giving and taking telephone messages with a partner. Then give the message to a third person.

### Real Talk

Will you do me a favor? =

Will you help me with something?

I have no idea. = I don't know.

## 7 About You

1. Do you often receive text messages or email messages from your friends?
2. How do you usually keep in touch with your friends?
3. Do you normally return calls quickly?
4. Do you remember to reply to messages?





## 8 Reading

### Before Reading

When do people usually write messages or leave notes?

# Dear Daughter

Dear Farah,

*I need you to do me a big favor. There's been an emergency, and I have to go to the hospital. Your grandmother fell down the stairs, and I'm afraid she may have a broken hip. Your brother is going to drive me there as soon as he gets home. I don't know how long I'll be there, so I really need your help tonight.*

*I didn't have time to finish preparing the meal, so please make dinner for the family. The chicken is ready—it's in the fridge. Just cook it with some rice. Will you also make a salad? Your father will be home at about 7 o'clock. He's going to be late because he has a meeting after work. Could you also wash Hameed's football uniform? His team has a big game tomorrow. He can't do it because he is taking me to the hospital. I did the rest of the laundry this morning, but I didn't have time to iron your father's clothes for tomorrow. Please do that for me. Thanks, dear.*

*Don't worry. Hameed will call you later to let you know about grandmother's condition.*

Love,  
Mom

*P.S. Tell Mona and Imad to help you wash up after dinner. And please make sure that they do all their homework. Don't let them watch TV until they've finished! Ask your father to help Imad with his math if you don't have time.*

### After Reading

1. What is the emergency?
2. What is Hameed going to do?
3. What does the mother want Farah to do?
4. Why can't Hameed wash his uniform?
5. What should Farah's younger brother and sister do?

### Discussion

How do you help your family?  
How do they help you?



# 14 Could You Do Me a Favor?



## 9 Writing

- A. Listen to Jason's messages from page 125 again. Write a short note for each message. Only include the necessary information. The first one is done as an example.



### Writing Corner

1. Be polite when you ask someone for a favor. Use *please*.  
Could you **please** help me with my math homework this evening?
2. If you cannot do the favor, you can politely apologize and explain why.  
**I'm sorry**, but I'm busy tonight. How about tomorrow?
3. When someone does you a favor, you should always thank him/her.  
**Thank you** so much for your help.      **Thanks** for helping me.

- B. Work with a partner. Take turns asking each other for a favor. Accept or refuse to do the favor. Use polite language: **please, I'm sorry, but..., thank you/thanks**.
- C. Write a note in which you ask someone to do you a favor. Explain why you need the favor. Use polite language and other ideas from this unit.

## 10 Project

In a group, write down the most common favors people ask. Present your ideas to the class.



# 11 Form, Meaning and Function

## Functions with *Will*

The modal verb *will* expresses the future time, and it is used in a variety of functions. We use *will* in expressions for the following purposes:

### Request

Will you help me?

### Offer

I'll help you carry that.

### Promise

I'll be careful. I **won't** do that again.

### Threat

Stop that or I'll tell mother.

### Refusal

She **won't** listen to me.

### Deduction

I suppose it'll be a formal event.

### Instant Decision

I'll wear my blue dress.

### Farewell

I'll see you tomorrow.



### A. Match each sentence with its function.

- |  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. _____ I'll try harder next time.          | a. offer            |
| 2. _____ I won't let you use my bike.        | b. refusal          |
| 3. _____ I'll have a chicken burger.         | c. threat           |
| 4. _____ I'll talk to you later.             | d. promise          |
| 5. _____ Will you explain it again?          | e. request          |
| 6. _____ I'll show you how to do it.         | f. instant decision |
| 7. _____ Stop that or I'll tell the teacher. | g. farewell         |
| 8. _____ He won't be home now.               | h. deduction        |

### B. Complete the sentences with *will* or *won't* and the verb in parentheses.

- I'm sorry that I let you down. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not disappoint) you again.
- Let's take a break. I \_\_\_\_\_ (make) us some coffee and a snack.
- If you don't leave immediately, I \_\_\_\_\_ (call) security.
- It's hot in here. \_\_\_\_\_ (you / turn on) the air conditioner?
- I'd like to stay, but I really have to go now. We \_\_\_\_\_ (talk) soon.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) the chicken and rice. And a salad to start with, please.
- The baby \_\_\_\_\_ (not stop) crying. I don't know what to do.
- We should wait. He \_\_\_\_\_ (not want) us to start without him.

### C. Work with a partner. Create short dialogs for three of the situations above.





A 76-year-old grandfather saved his 8-year-old grandson from a 13-foot-long (4-meter-long) anaconda. The boy was playing with friends near a small river in Cosmorama, Brazil, when the snake attacked him. The boy's grandfather was working nearby. When the grandfather heard the boy's screams, he ran to the riverside and was able to get the animal off the boy. The fight between the snake and the man continued. Finally, someone managed to give the grandfather a big knife, and the grandfather killed the snake. Our hero was very strong, because it normally takes five men to overpower and get control of a snake that size.



## The NEWS @ FIVE



The last thing 17-year-old Ricardo Gordon remembers was that a storm was coming, and he was rushing to get inside. Next thing he knew, he was lying in a hospital bed. Here is what happened. Ricardo was listening to the live broadcast of the football game when lightning hit him. As a result, his hair and ears were burned, and he had dark spots all over his body. The wounds on his body followed the wire of his smartphone, from his ears down to his hip, where he was carrying the device. The electric current traveled from his smartphone to his headphones. Ricardo is lucky to be alive!

### Quick Check ✓

**A. Vocabulary.** Match each word with the meaning.

- |                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. ____ be fired    | a. dominate           |
| 2. ____ shriek      | b. piece of equipment |
| 3. ____ risk        | c. lose one's job     |
| 4. ____ get control | d. injury             |
| 5. ____ wound       | e. shout loudly       |
| 6. ____ device      | f. take a chance      |

**B. Comprehension.** Match the titles with the news stories.



- a. Shocking Match    b. Tight Squeeze    c. Bad Example

**C.** Answer about the stories.



1. What did Percy do wrong?
2. What was the grandson doing when the snake appeared?
3. What was Ricardo doing when he was struck by lightning?

## 2 Pair Work

**A. Ask** and **answer** about the stories.

-  What was Ricardo doing when the lightning hit him?
-  He was listening to the football game on his smartphone.

**B. Ask** and **answer** about yourself.

-  What were you doing when the big storm started?
-  I was waiting for a bus.



## 3 Grammar

### Past Progressive

#### Affirmative (+)

I	<b>was</b>	sleeping.
He		
She		
It		
We	<b>were</b>	sleeping.
You		
They		

#### Negative (-)

I	<b>wasn't</b>	sleeping.
He		
She		
It		
We	<b>weren't</b>	sleeping.
You		
They		

#### Yes-No Questions (?)

<b>Was</b>	I	sleeping?
	he	
	she	
<b>Were</b>	it	sleeping?
	we	
	you	
	they	

#### Short Answers (+)

Yes,	I	<b>was.</b>
	he	
	she	
	it	<b>were.</b>
	we	
	you	
	they	

#### Short Answers (-)

No,	I	<b>wasn't.</b>
	he	
	she	
	it	<b>weren't.</b>
	we	
	you	
	they	

### Past Progressive + *When*

Use *when* to indicate that a longer, continuous action is interrupted by a shorter one.

**Action 1:** I was taking a shower.

**Action 2:** The telephone rang.

I **was taking** a shower **when** the telephone rang.

**Q:** What were you doing **when** I called you?

**A:** I **was taking** a shower.

**A.** Make sentences using **when**. Follow the example.

**Jack / sleep // hear / noise** *Jack was sleeping when he heard the noise.*

1. Asma / cook dinner // electricity / go out
2. The people / going home // fire / start
3. The workers / leave / building // elevator / stop
4. Majid / look at / trees // he / see / parrot
5. The thief / steal / car // police / arrest him
6. The students / wait for / bus // rain / start





B. The guests arrived early. What were the Smiths doing when they arrived? Write sentences.

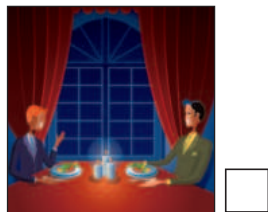


💡 Mr. Smith was mowing the lawn.

1. Mrs. Smith \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Grandfather \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Grandmother \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Big brother \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Big sister \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Little brother \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Little sister \_\_\_\_\_.

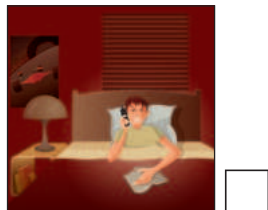
## 4 Listening

Listen and match each conversation to a picture. Write the number next to the picture.

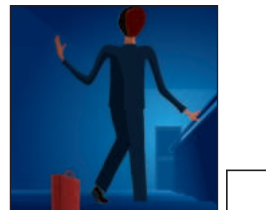













## 5 Pronunciation

Listen. Note the word stress. Then practice.

1st syllable	2nd syllable	3rd syllable
lightning	performance	electricity
language	electric	
	attraction	



## 6 Conversation

**Reporter:** So, Robert, could you tell us what happened?

**Robert:** Well, I was delivering a pizza and a bottle of soda to a high-rise apartment building last Friday night when the elevator broke down.

**Reporter:** So, what did you do?

**Robert:** I shouted and pushed the alarm button, but no one heard me.

**Reporter:** Why didn't you just use your cell phone to call someone?

**Robert:** I wasn't carrying my cell phone. I just forgot it.

**Reporter:** How long were you in the elevator?

**Robert:** I was stuck in there for 10 hours.

**Reporter:** Weren't you nervous and scared?

**Robert:** Not really. **I kept my cool.** I ate the pizza and drank the soda. Then I went to sleep.

**Reporter:** How did you get out?

**Robert:** Well, finally, some residents called the building manager because the elevator wasn't working. When they got the elevator started, I was sleeping on the floor of the elevator with the empty pizza box.



### Real Talk

**kept my cool** = didn't get stressed

## About the Conversation

1. What was Robert doing in the building?
2. How did he get stuck in the elevator?
3. What did he do when that happened?
4. How long was he in the elevator?
5. How did he get out?
6. What kind of person do you think Robert is?

## Your Turn

Choose an important event that happened in your town/country and say what you were doing at the time.

## 7 About You

1. Are you scared of elevators or small spaces? Why?
2. Were you ever in a blackout? What were you doing when it happened? What did you do?
3. Did you ever hear about an unusual incident like the one in the Conversation? Describe it.
4. Were you ever in a situation where you couldn't communicate with anyone? Explain.



## 8 Reading

### Before Reading

Read the headline. What do you think the newspaper article is about?

*The Herald*

# Age Means Nothing



Six-year-old Marta Garcia was sitting with her little three-year-old brother in the backseat of the family car as her dad prepared to get in the car and take the wheel. Suddenly a stranger appeared and pushed Marta's father out of the way. He wanted to steal the car. The father fought back, but the thief overpowered him and got in the car. Marta's father was holding on to the car door and screaming when the man started to drive down the road. He said later, "My children were in there. I wasn't going to let go." Finally he lost his grip on the car and fell onto the side of the road. The car disappeared, and the father sat crying on the side of the road.

But Marta wasn't going to

let the thief get away with that. She started hitting the carjacker with her fists and pulling his hair. Finally he got tired of it, stopped the car, and ordered the two children out. Marta took her brother from his car seat and helped him get out of the car.

Some minutes later, when Marta's father looked up, he couldn't believe his eyes. His two kids were coming toward him. Marta was holding her brother's hand.

Marta said, "I wasn't scared. I wanted us to be safe. I was hitting the bad man. I just wanted Daddy." The local police officer said, "Marta is a brave little girl."

### After Reading

Complete the sentences.

1. Marta was sitting in the backseat when \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Marta's father fought with the thief, but \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Marta hit the thief and pulled his hair until \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Marta's dad was sitting on the side of the road when \_\_\_\_\_.

### Discussion

Do you think it's a good idea to try to stop a thief? Talk about it.

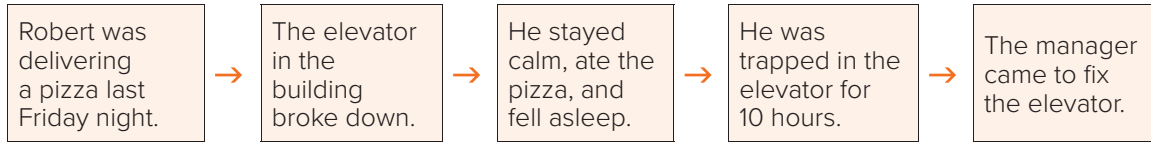






## 9 Writing

A. Look at the event chain diagram. What news story is it from in this unit?



### Writing Corner

Follow these steps when writing a summary:

1. Skim the text for the main idea.
2. Find the important information.
3. Delete any unnecessary information.
4. Do not add any opinions of your own.
5. Use your own words to write the summary.

B. Read the summary of the news story. Can you think of another suitable headline?

#### Delivery Boy Trapped in Elevator

Last Friday night, Robert was delivering a pizza to an apartment building. The elevator broke down and he was trapped inside. Robert didn't panic. He ate the pizza and fell asleep. Ten hours later, the building manager came to fix the elevator and he found Robert asleep inside.

C. Choose a news story from the unit. Write notes in the event chain diagram.

```

    graph TD
      A[ ] --> B[ ]
      B --> C[ ]
      C --> D[ ]
    
```

D. Summarize one of the news stories in the unit in your own words. Use your notes from the event chain diagram. Write your own headline for the story.

## 10 Project

Find an unusual news event and present it in your own words to the class.

# 11 Form, Meaning and Function

## Adverbs of Degree

Adverbs of degree tell about the intensity of a verb, adjective, or adverb. Some common adverbs of degree are: *absolutely, almost, completely, extremely, hardly, just, quite, really, very.*

Adverbs of degree go before the main verb and before the adjective or adverb.

- |                                       |                                    |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| I <b>absolutely</b> agree with you.   | He was <b>just</b> running.        |
| You <b>almost</b> missed your flight. | He can <b>hardly</b> stand up.     |
| The students did <b>quite</b> well.   | He is <b>completely</b> exhausted. |



## Could and Was Able To

We use *could* and *was able to* to talk about general ability in the past.

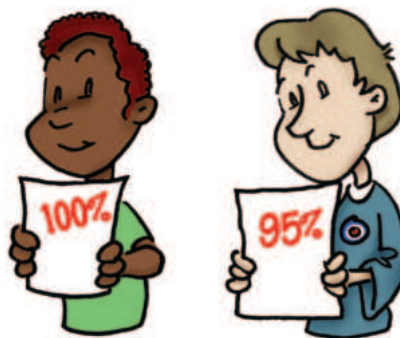
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| I <b>could</b> run fast when I was young. | I <b>was able to</b> run fast when I was young. |
| They <b>couldn't</b> see in the dark.     | They <b>weren't able to</b> see in the dark.    |

We use *was/were able to*, but not *could*, to talk about one specific past action.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| He <b>was able to</b> rescue his grandson. | He <del>could</del> rescue his grandson. |
|--|--|

A. Write each student's test score next to the name. (Note: 60% = pass)

- |   |      |
|---|------|
| 1. _____ Jason completely failed the test.    | 100% |
| 2. _____ Mark almost passed the test.         | 95%  |
| 3. _____ Ali's test was absolutely perfect.   | 75%  |
| 4. _____ Bill did extremely well on the test. | 60%  |
| 5. _____ Fahd's test result was quite good.   | 58%  |
| 6. _____ Tom was just able to pass.           | 30%  |



B. Circle the correct words in the story. In some cases, both words are correct.

Six-year-old Marta Garcia and her baby brother were sitting in the back seat of the car. Mr. Garcia was (1. almost / just) getting into the car when a strange man pushed him away. Mr. Garcia tried to stop him, but the man was (2. very / absolutely) strong and (3. could / was able to) overpower Mr. Garcia. The man, who wanted to steal the car, got in and started driving away. Mr. Garcia grabbed the car door, but he (4. couldn't / wasn't able to) hold on and fell onto the road. He felt (5. quite / completely) helpless and sat there crying.

At first, the thief (6. hardly / just) noticed the children who were sitting quietly in the back. Then Marta became (7. really / extremely) upset. She started hitting the thief and pulling his hair. He (8. hardly / almost) drove off the road. Finally, he (9. couldn't / wasn't able to) stand it any longer, so he stopped the car and ordered the children to get out. Marta (10. could / was able to) help her brother out of the car.

The children started walking back. Mr. Garcia was (11. very / absolutely) thrilled to see his children again. Marta is an (12. absolutely / extremely) brave girl.



# 16 Have You Ever...?

رابط الدرس الرقمي



www.iem.edu.sa

## 1 Listen and Discuss

Look at some people's experiences. Mark the things you've done. Compare with a partner.

## Have You Had an Exciting Life?

Our reporter Scott Turner asks people about their experiences.



**Scott:** Have you ever been hang gliding? ▲

**Omar:** Yes, I have. I went last year. It was awesome.



◀ **Scott:** Have you ever flown in a small plane?

**John:** No, never. This is my first time.

**Scott:** Have you ever eaten something weird? ▶

**Qassim:** Yes, we have. My family and I ate durian fruit in Malaysia.



▲ **Scott:** Have you ever ridden a camel?

**Adnan:** Yes, when I was in Egypt.



▲ **Scott:** Have you ever seen an unusual animal?

**Mark:** Yes. I've seen a zorse. A zorse is half zebra, half horse.

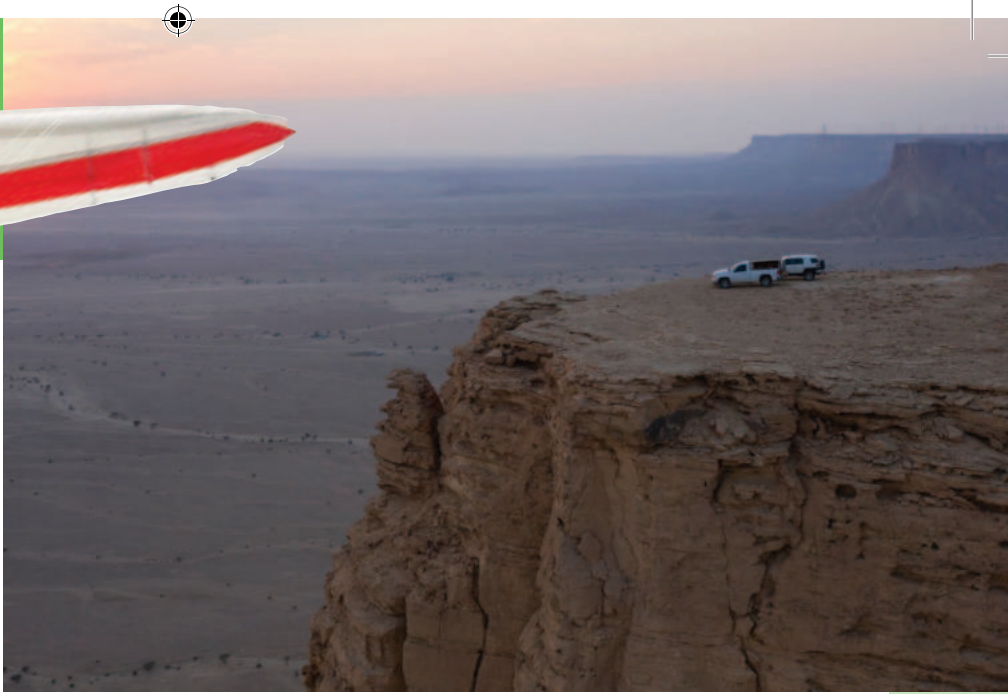


**Scott:** Faisal, have you ever gone on a desert safari? ▶

**Faisal:** Yes, I have.

**Scott:** When did you do it?

**Faisal:** Two years ago near Riyadh. It was fun and exciting.



▲ **Scott:** Have you ever tried cliff hanging?

**Don:** No, I haven't. No ropes, no harness. I'm not crazy.

## Quick Check ✓





**A. Vocabulary.** Find words from the conversations in these categories: sports, foods, animals. Write them.

**B. Comprehension.** Answer **yes** or **no**.




1. \_\_\_\_ John has flown in a small plane.
2. \_\_\_\_ Omar has been hang gliding.
3. \_\_\_\_ Adnan rode a camel in Egypt.
4. \_\_\_\_ Qassim and his family have never eaten durian fruit.
5. \_\_\_\_ Don went cliff hanging last year.
6. \_\_\_\_ Mark has never seen an odd animal.

## 2 Pair Work

**A. Ask** and **answer** about the people.

-  Has Faisal ever gone on a desert safari?
-  Yes, he has.
-  When did he do it?
-  He did it two years ago.

**B. Ask** and **answer** about yourself.

-  Have you ever eaten durian fruit?
-  No, I haven't. Have you?
-  Yes, I have. I ate durian fruit when I was in Malaysia.



## 3 Grammar

### Present Perfect

Use the present perfect to talk about an indefinite time in the past, when the specific time in the past is not important. It is often used to talk about time from the past up to now, for example, in a person's life up to now.

#### Affirmative (+)

I've	<b>been</b>	to Bahrain.	(I + have)
You've			(you + have)
He's			(he + has)
She's			(she + has)
We've			(we + have)
They've			(they + have)

#### Negative (-)

I	<b>haven't</b>	<b>been</b>	to Bahrain.
You			
He	<b>hasn't</b>		
She			
We	<b>haven't</b>		
They			

#### Yes-No Questions (?)

<b>Have</b>	I	ever	<b>been</b>	to Bahrain?
	you			
<b>Has</b>	he			
	she			
<b>Have</b>	we			
	they			

#### Short Answers (+)

Yes,	I	<b>have.</b>
	you	
	he	<b>has.</b>
	she	
	we	<b>have.</b>
	they	

#### Short Answers (-)

No,	I	<b>haven't.</b>
	you	
	he	<b>hasn't.</b>
	she	
	we	<b>haven't.</b>
	they	

- The present perfect is made up of the verb *have* and the past participle.
- To form the past participle of regular verbs, add *-ed*.
- Here are some irregular past participle forms:

be – <b>been</b>	eat – <b>eaten</b>	go – <b>gone</b>	meet – <b>met</b>	see – <b>seen</b>	take – <b>taken</b>
do – <b>done</b>	fly – <b>flown</b>	hear – <b>heard</b>	ride – <b>ridden</b>	swim – <b>swum</b>	write – <b>written</b>

See the list of irregular verbs on page 180.

**Note:** *Ever* means “at any time.” It is often used in questions with the present perfect.

### Present Perfect versus Simple Past

Use the simple past to indicate a specific time in the past.

I've **been** to Bahrain.

I **was** in Bahrain **last year**.

**A.** Complete the conversations. Then practice with a partner.

- A:** Have you ever \_\_\_\_\_ a snake?  
**B:** No, I \_\_\_\_\_. Have you?  
**A:** Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ one in the desert.  
**B:** Were you frightened?

- A:** \_\_\_\_\_ Nasser ever gone snorkeling?  
**B:** Yes, he has.  
**A:** \_\_\_\_\_ he like it?  
**B:** No, he \_\_\_\_\_. He was scared.

- A:** I \_\_\_\_\_ ants in Mexico years ago.  
**B:** What did they taste like?  
**A:** They \_\_\_\_\_ spicy.

- A:** I've never \_\_\_\_\_ in a helicopter.  
**B:** I have. I \_\_\_\_\_ in one over the Red Sea.  
**A:** I'd like to do that one day.

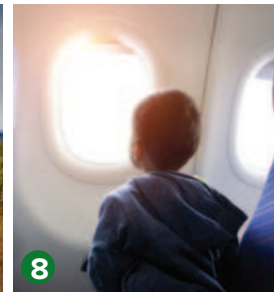
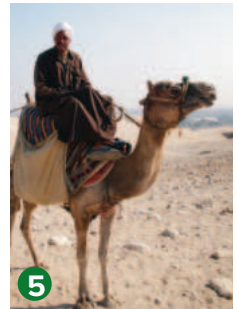




B. Work with a partner. Ask and answer about your experiences.

A: Have you ever gone ice-skating?

B: No, I haven't. / Yes, I have. I went ice-skating in the winter.



C. Tell about your partner's experiences to another classmate.

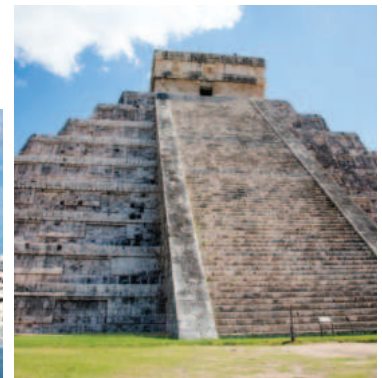
## 4 Listening

Listen to Matt talking about his travel experiences. Mark the things he's done.

1. \_\_\_ visited historic places
2. \_\_\_ climbed a volcano
3. \_\_\_ eaten grasshopper
4. \_\_\_ gone to Colombia
5. \_\_\_ been to Nicaragua
6. \_\_\_ visited the Panama Canal area



Panama City ▲



Mayan ruins in Guatemala ▲

## 5 Pronunciation

Listen to the /v/ sound in **have** and **'ve**. Then practice.

I've never flown in a plane.

You've flown a plane!

They've seen a shark.

What have you done?

Have you climbed a mountain?

You haven't been to a museum?



# 16 Have You Ever...?



## 6 Conversation



**Michael:** What's the most awesome experience you've ever had?

**Andrew:** **Definitely** when I went shark diving. Have you ever heard of it?

**Michael:** No, never.

**Andrew:** Well, I went shark diving in Gansbaai, South Africa. It's one of the best places in the world to see the great white sharks up close.

**Michael:** **You're out of your mind!** You'll never catch me diving in the middle of sharks.

**Andrew:** It's not like that. You go out on a boat to a place called "Shark Alley," and you go down inside a cage. The people on the boat throw out big pieces of fish tied to a rope in order to attract the sharks. The sharks come up real close, and frequently they knock the cage with their heads.

**Michael:** Weren't you afraid?

**Andrew:** **To be honest**, I was **scared to death**.



**Gansbaai,  
South Africa**

**FYI** "Gansbaai" is the Afrikaans word that means "goose bay."

### Real Talk

**Definitely** = expressing a high degree of certainty

**You're out of your mind!** = You're crazy!

**To be honest** = to tell the truth

**scared to death** = very frightened

### About the Conversation

1. Where did Andrew go on his vacation?
2. What kind of experience was it?
3. How do they attract the sharks?
4. Was he scared?
5. What does Michael think?

### Your Turn

Find someone in your class who has done these things. Then share your findings with the class.

	Name	Who/What/When and Where
gone snorkeling		
flown in an airplane		
eaten an unusual food item		
traveled to an exciting place		
met a famous person		

## 7 About You



1. What was the most dangerous or most exciting experience you've ever had?
2. What was the most relaxing, peaceful experience you've ever had?



## 8 Reading

### Before Reading

What do you know about camels? Have you ever ridden one?



## Ships of the Desert

"It's the one of the most uncomfortable experiences I've ever had. But it was incredibly fun! I'll never forget it!" That's what many people say after they have ridden a camel for the first time. Camels, also known as "ships of the desert," have been a favorite means of transport for millennia due to their ability to withstand the hot, dry climate of the desert.

Riding a camel is not the same as riding a horse. First, the rider must sit and balance himself about two meters above the ground on the camel's hump. Second, a camel walks differently than a horse. It moves the two right legs together, and then the two left legs. This can make the rider swing from side to side.

### Riding a camel for the first time? Here are some helpful tips:

1. Wear sunscreen, long sleeves, and a hat for protection from the hot sun.
2. Wear long pants and socks to protect your legs from getting itchy.
3. Always go riding with an experienced cameleer who knows the animal. Camels are emotional and will respond better if a familiar person is nearby.
4. Get on when the camel is in a sitting position. Put one foot on a small stool and then throw your other leg over the camel's hump in one motion.
5. When the camel stands up, hold on tight and grip your knees around the camel's sides. As the camel leans forward, lean back in the opposite direction to keep from falling.
6. Sit and hold the reins confidently. Camels are intelligent and can sense if you are nervous.
7. Relax in the saddle and bend your knees at a 90° angle. This will help you balance as the camel swings you from side to side.
8. After the ride, wait for the camel to sit down. Hold on. Lean back and then forward, just as you did when the camel stood up.



### After Reading

1. Why are camels called "ships of the desert"?
2. How is riding a camel different from riding a horse?
3. What are two characteristics of camels?
4. Which tip do you think is the most important and why?





## 9 Writing

A. Read about Ali's uncle. Circle all the linking words and phrases that you can find.

Do you know anyone who has gone scuba diving in the coral reefs of the Red Sea, mountain biking in Al Baha, or paragliding in Asir? These are just a few of the exciting things my uncle has done. Hameed is a travel writer who publishes articles to promote youth tourism in the Kingdom. He believes that the best way to write about things is to experience them. He has ridden camels and raced Arabian horses. He has also climbed to the summit of Shada Mountain. He has been sand skiing in the Rub' Al Khali Desert and has driven a 4x4 in the dunes of Al Qassim.



Of course, he is careful. "Safety comes first," he always says. Before he does any extreme or dangerous activity, he first learns about it. Then he trains with expert instructors. In fact, he spent a week practicing in a pool before he went scuba diving in the sea.

So what's next for Uncle Hameed? He hasn't flown in a hot air balloon, nor has he tried kite surfing. However, he has promised to take me mountain biking around Al Souda Mountain when I'm 16. I can't wait!

### Writing Corner

Linking words and phrases help connect ideas and make a paragraph easier to read.

1. To show addition: *and, or, nor, also, too*
2. To show contrast: *but, however, on the other hand*
3. To give examples or emphasis: *for example, like, such as; of course, in fact*
4. To show time: *when, before, after, since, first, second, next, then*

B. Think of someone you know or invent a character that has had an exciting life. Write notes in the chart about what the person has done and why it is exciting.

Activity	Why it is exciting

C. Write about someone who you think has had an exciting life. Explain why. What has the person done?

## 10 Project

Research an extreme sport or activity. Present the information to the class.





# 11 Form, Meaning and Function

## Review of the Present Tenses and the Simple Past

### Simple Present

Use the simple present to talk about permanent actions like habits or routines. We often use frequency expressions such as: *always, usually, often, rarely, never, every day, once a month, on weekends.*

The students usually **write** a test every month.

### Present Progressive

Use the present progressive to talk about temporary actions that are happening now. We often use time expressions such as: *right now, now, at the moment.*

The students **are writing** a test at the moment.

### Present Perfect

Use the present perfect to talk about actions that have happened at an indefinite time in the past or actions that have happened from the past up to now. We often use time expressions such as: *ever, never, so far, yet.*

The students **haven't written** a test yet.

### Simple Past

Use the simple past to talk about actions that were completed in the past. We often use time expressions such as: *yesterday, last week, two days ago, a year ago, in the 19<sup>th</sup> century, in 2010.*

The students **wrote** a test last week.

### A. Choose the correct verb for each sentence.

- Hameed \_\_\_\_\_ his horse, Smokey, almost every day.  
a. rides                                      b. is riding                                      c. has ridden
- He \_\_\_\_\_ his horse Smokey because of its gray color.  
a. is naming                                      b. named                                      c. names
- He \_\_\_\_\_ Smokey to become a champion jumper.  
a. is training                                      b. trains                                      c. trained
- Hameed and Smokey \_\_\_\_\_ in two competitions so far.  
a. are                                      b. were                                      c. have been
- They \_\_\_\_\_ the competitions, but they did quite well.  
a. didn't win                                      b. don't win                                      c. haven't won
- Hameed \_\_\_\_\_ that they will win the next competition.  
a. is believing                                      b. believes                                      c. has believed



### B. Put the verbs in parentheses into the correct forms of the present or past.

- We \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) to Oman yet, but we \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to UAE last year.
- Ali usually \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) to work, but yesterday he \_\_\_\_\_ (take) a taxi.
- She \_\_\_\_\_ (lose) her keys, so now she \_\_\_\_\_ (search) the house to find them.
- So far she \_\_\_\_\_ (look) in her room, but the keys \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) there.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ (not eat) anything all day because we \_\_\_\_\_ (fast) for Ramadan.
- Oh, no! It \_\_\_\_\_ (rain), and I \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) my umbrella in the car.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (not know) why you're nervous. \_\_\_\_\_ (you / not ever / fly) in a plane?
- They \_\_\_\_\_ (not use) cars in the 19th century. Today, people \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) their cars everywhere.



# EXPANSION Units 12–16

## 1 Language Review

**A.** Use the correct form of the verb. For some items, more than one form is correct.

1. It \_\_\_\_\_ (be) always cool in the mountains in the summer.
2. Do you think it \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) tomorrow?
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not believe) those weather reports. They're often wrong.
4. What does Arshad \_\_\_\_\_ (plan) to do in the future?
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ (call) you when we get to Abu Dhabi.
6. It \_\_\_\_\_ (snow) when we left Montreal.
7. They couldn't sail yesterday because there \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) any wind.
8. Will you \_\_\_\_\_ (help) me with the decorations?

**B.** Make predictions about the future. Answer the questions. Then compare with a partner.

1. What kind of job do you think you'll have?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. When do you think you'll get married?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. How many children will you have?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Where will you live?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Which team will be champion in your country this year?

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Where will you go on your next vacation?

\_\_\_\_\_

**C.** Choose the appropriate sentence or expression for a polite answer.

- |   |                             |                      |
|---|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Will you help me?                      | a. Why should I?            | b. Certainly.        |
| 2. I don't understand these instructions. | a. I'll help you.           | b. Can't you read?   |
| 3. Could you turn off your cell phone?    | a. Of course.               | b. I'm talking.      |
| 4. Please let me see those photos.        | a. Not now. I'm busy.       | b. Sure.             |
| 5. Would you like to have dinner now?     | a. No, you can't cook.      | b. Yes, I'm hungry.  |
| 6. I'm sorry. I didn't see you.           | a. Put on your glasses.     | b. That's all right. |
| 7. Can you pass me the bread, please?     | a. Get up and get it.       | b. Here you are.     |
| 8. Let me carry that box for you.         | a. That's very kind of you. | b. No way!           |





D. Make the request. Use the word in parentheses.

💡 Mr. White wants Tommy to wash the car. (can)

*Tommy, can you wash the car?*

1. Fadwa wants her sister to help her with the dishes. (will)

2. The children want their dad to drive them to the mall. (could)

3. Imad wants his mother to wash his uniform. (can)

4. Hanan wants her friend to do her a favor. (would)

E. Use the words to write sentences with the past progressive.

💡 I / take a shower / when

*I was taking a shower when the water stopped.*

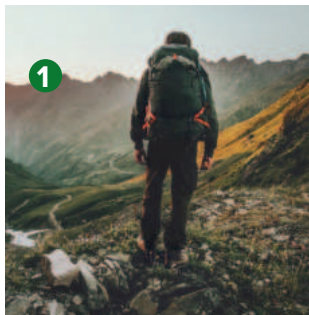
1. Fahd / ride motorcycle / when

2. They / play volleyball / when

3. Yahya / mow the lawn / when

4. I / look out the window / when

F. Write which things you have done or haven't done.



1



2



3



4



5



6

1. \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. \_\_\_\_\_

6. \_\_\_\_\_





## 2 Reading

### Before Reading

Look at the pictures.

What do you know about the two billionaires?



# Success!

From a poor family in Saudi Arabia, Sheikh Sulaiman bin Abdul-Aziz Al-Rajhi managed to become a billionaire and one of the world's most respected businessmen and philanthropists.

Sulaiman Al-Rajhi grew up in Al-Qassim, where he and his older brother, Saleh, set up a small business. They started by changing money for travelers who were going to visit the holy cities of Makkah and Madinah. When the oil industry grew in the 1970s, the brothers expanded their business. Many men from other countries came to work in Saudi Arabia. Sulaiman and Saleh helped these men by creating a safe and reliable way to send money back home to their families. Then, in 1983, they opened Saudi Arabia's first Islamic bank. Today, Al-Rajhi Bank is the largest Islamic bank in the world.

Over the years, Sulaiman Al-Rajhi has invested his wealth in many other businesses, education, and charities. One of these is organic farming, because he believes in a

healthy lifestyle. He also set up the Awqaf Sulaiman Al-Rajhi Holding Company (ASRHC) which supports charities and humanitarian projects around the world. In 2009, the Awqaf Sulaiman Al-Rajhi Holding Company (ASRHC) opened the Sulaiman Al-Rajhi University, which offers courses in Nursing, Medicine, and Health Sciences.

In 2011, Sulaiman Al-Rajhi decided to give away his entire fortune of \$7.7 billion. He gave most of his money to his family and the rest to charity. For his many years of hard work to establish an Islamic bank and his generous efforts to help others, he was awarded the King Faisal International Prize for Service to Islam in 2012. Today he is rich in experience, and he happily continues to work on projects with the Awqaf Sulaiman Al-Rajhi Holding Company (ASRHC).

# Success!

Success!

As a young boy, Bill Gates was an unlikely candidate for one of the future richest men in the world. He was shy and not very sociable. But he had a special talent for math and science. His parents recognized his intelligence and enrolled him in Lakeside, a school in Seattle that was known for its high academic achievement.



It was there that Bill Gates came into contact with the first computer, and also met fellow student Paul Allen, who shared his fascination for computers. At the age of 17, Gates built a timetable system for the school and earned \$4,200.

In 1976, Gates dropped out of Harvard and started Microsoft with Paul. Their big opportunity came in 1980 when they signed an agreement to provide the operating system for IBM's new personal computer. The operating system, MS-DOS, became the operating system for PCs all over the world.

In 1973, Bill Gates went to Harvard University, but his heart was not in his studies. While he was in college, he teamed up with Paul Allen to write the first computer language program for the PC (personal computer) called BASIC.

Bill Gates became a billionaire, and today he uses his money to improve the lives of hundreds of people globally through an organization that he and his wife founded—the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation.

Success!

### After Reading

1. List what each person has done to become successful.

Sulaiman Al-Rajhi	Bill Gates

2. What do Sulaiman Al-Rajhi and Bill Gates have in common?

### Discussion

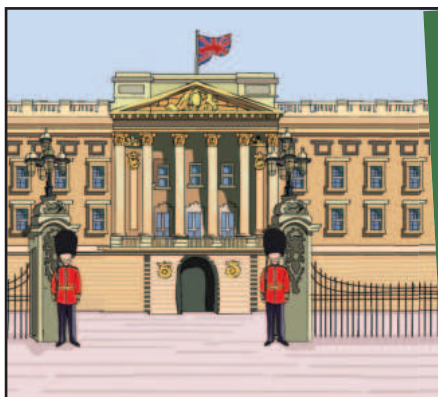
1. In your opinion, what do you think is the key to success?
2. Talk about successful people that you know or have read about.

## 3 Project

Choose a role model. Do research about the person. Present your findings to the class.

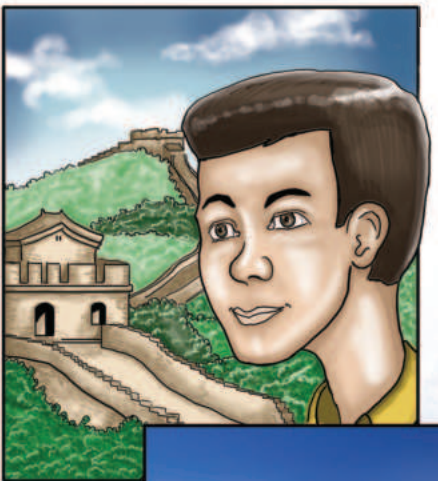
4 Chant Along 

# Travel the World Over

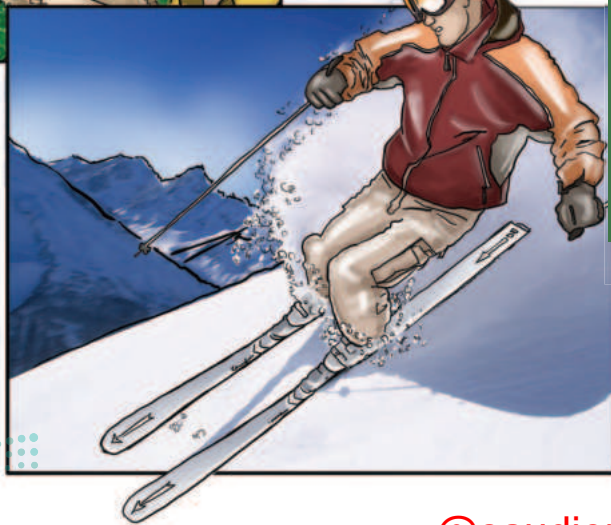


I'm going to travel all around Europe,  
Ski the Alps at great heights.  
I'm going to climb the Eiffel Tower,  
And, in Madrid, watch the bull fights.  
I'm going to sail to the Greek islands,  
And taste Italian cuisine,  
Stroll through markets in London,  
And see the palace of the king.

I'm going to explore all over Asia,  
Trek all along the Great Wall,  
Ride a rickshaw in Shanghai,  
Hike the Himalayas in Nepal.  
I'm going to ride elephants in India,  
Drive a 4x4 in Arabian sand,  
I'm going to smell the cherry blossoms,  
And take the bullet train in Japan.



I'm going to North and South America,  
Up high to Machu Picchu in Peru,  
Catch a cab in New York City,  
And cross the Great Lakes by canoe.  
I'm going to snowmobile in Alaska.  
I'm going to raft down the Amazon,  
Listen to the roar of Venezuelan Falls,  
And cruise right around Cape Horn.



I'll go on wildlife safaris in Africa,  
Dive in Australia's Great Barrier Reef.  
I'm going to travel the world over,  
And see things beyond belief.



## Vocabulary

A. Put the words into the correct category.

rickshaw	stroll	hike	raft	4x4	train
cruise	sail	canoe	trek	climb	cab

Travel on Foot	Transport on Water	Transport on Land

B. Look at the chant. Write four things related to the senses.

- 🔦 *See the palace of the king.*
- \_\_\_\_\_
  - \_\_\_\_\_
  - \_\_\_\_\_
  - \_\_\_\_\_

## Comprehension

1. What is the man going to do?
2. Which continents is he going to visit?
3. Which European countries is he going to visit?
4. Which Asian countries is he going to visit?
5. What do you think the last line means?



## 5 Writing

Write about a place where you want to travel and what you are going to do there.

## 6 Project

Write another verse for the chant about world travel. Present it to the class.



## 7 Chant Along

# I Never Found Gold Anywhere Until I Got Back Home

I've been to Jamaica.  
I've been to Japan.  
I've traveled all over the world.  
I've sailed on a ship and flown in a plane.  
But I've never found diamonds or gold.

I studied in Paris when I was a teen—  
I looked for happiness there.  
Then I went to London where I saw the queen.  
Worked at a job in Mayfair.  
But I've never found gold anywhere.  
No, I never found gold anywhere.

**I've been a sailor, a waiter, a writer.  
I've been a teller, a driver, a fighter.**

When I finished school, I worked in a bank.  
Then I fought in a terrible war.  
I shot with a rifle and rode in a tank.  
But I've never broken the law.  
But I've never found gold anywhere.  
No, I never found gold anywhere.

**I've been a sailor, a waiter, a writer.  
I've been a teller, a driver, a fighter.**



▲ United Kingdom Parliament



▲ A beach in Jamaica



▲ Mount Fuji in Japan



▲ Sorbonne University in France

# I Never Found Gold Anywhere Until I Got Back Home



## Vocabulary

What do you think the following expressions mean?

1. I looked for happiness there. \_\_\_\_\_
2. I've never found gold anywhere. \_\_\_\_\_
3. I've never broken the law. \_\_\_\_\_

## Comprehension

A. List the countries the speaker in the chant has been to and the jobs he has had.

Countries	Jobs

B. Answer the questions.

1. When did the man study in Paris?
2. What did he do in London?
3. What did he do after he finished school?
4. What did he do in the army?
5. Has he ever done anything wrong in his life?
6. What kind of life has he had?



## Writing

Write an interview with the man.

## Discussion

1. What do you think about the kind of life the speaker has had?
2. Would you like to have a life like his? Why or why not?
3. Choose another title for the chant.





# Vocabulary

## 1 Are You Here on Vacation?

### VOCABULARY

#### Nouns

address	email address	key card	participant
age	festival	last name	reception desk
credit card	first name	nationality	reservation
date of birth	form	nickname	spelling
elevator	hotel	occupation	telephone number

#### Verbs

check into	pay (for)
fill in	spell
greet	stay (in)
introduce	

### EXPRESSIONS

#### Conversation openers

Excuse me.  
How about you?  
How are you?  
How are you doing?  
It's good to see you.

#### Saying goodbye

Bye.  
Good night.  
See you tomorrow.  
Take care.

#### Introductions

I'd like to introduce you to . . .  
Let me introduce you to . . .  
My name is . . .  
My nickname's . . .  
Nice to meet you (too).

#### Giving personal information

How do you spell your  
(last) name?  
I'm from . . .  
I was born in . . .  
I was raised in . . .

#### Expressing thanks

Thank you so much.  
You're welcome.

#### Apologizing

I'm so sorry.  
That's all right.

#### Asking for directions/ information

Where are you from?  
Where can I find out about . . . ?  
Where's . . . ?

#### Offering

Can I help you?

#### Real Talk

Have a nice stay.      Here you are.

#### Idioms

on business  
on vacation

## 2 What Are They Making?

### VOCABULARY

#### Nouns

actor	director	martial arts	stuntman
balance	documentary	scene	TV series
cameraman	episode	script	
crew	ladder	studio	
detective	location	stunt	

#### Verbs

break	run away
come back	smell (good)
feed	taste (bad)
film	
look around	

### EXPRESSIONS

#### Expressions of approval

Excellent.  
That's great.  
You're doing fine.

#### Expression of disapproval

No, that's wrong.

#### Real Talk

all by myself  
Not at all.  
So



# Vocabulary

## 3 Who's Who

### VOCABULARY

#### Nouns

advertisement	free time
bridge	graphic designer
business management	marketing manager
call center	nurse
representative	pilot
college	president
company	psychologist
computer programmer	salary
computer science	salesperson
customer service	sales representative
deadline	tour
design	travel agent
engineer	waiter
executive	

#### Nouns— Work places

advertising firm  
call center  
computer software  
company  
construction company  
furniture store  
hospital  
travel agency

#### Verbs

design  
organize  
produce

#### Adjectives

boring  
crazy  
difficult  
easy  
exciting  
exotic  
frustrating  
fun  
interesting  
part-time  
satisfying  
stressful

### EXPRESSIONS

#### Expressions of surprise/approval

That's cool. (*slang*)  
Wow!

#### Asking about someone's occupation

What do you do?

#### Real Talk

yeah  
You know . . .

## 4 Favorite Pastimes

### VOCABULARY

#### Nouns

board game	leisure
current events	pastime
dieting	physical fitness
food court	preference
hobby	text message
indoor climbing	video game

#### Verbs

climb	meet
cook	paint
draw	play (a sport)
exercise	practice
go online	receive
hang out	send
know how to	work out

#### Adjectives

dangerous  
popular  
relaxing  
safe  
unusual

#### Adverbs of frequency

always  
never  
often  
seldom  
sometimes  
usually

### EXPRESSIONS

#### Talk about ability

(I) know how to . . .  
(I) don't know how to . . .

#### Real Talk

I see  
stuff like that  
You mean, . . .  
You must come along . . . sometime.



# Vocabulary

## 5 Is There Any Ice Cream?

### VOCABULARY

#### Nouns—Foods and drinks

appetizer	dessert	onion	soup
apple pie	dish	order	steak
bean	fish	pasta	take-out food
beverage	fruit	potato	tea
carrot	ice cream	rice	tomato
cheesecake	juice	salad	turkey
chicken	lettuce	sandwich	vegetable
chocolate	main course	sauce	water
coffee	meat	seafood	
cookie	menu	shrimp	
cucumber	milk	soft drink	

#### Containers/ Partitives

a bottle of  
a cup of  
a glass of  
a piece of

#### Adjectives

baked  
fresh  
fried  
giant  
grilled  
roasted  
steamed

#### Verbs

drink  
order

### EXPRESSIONS

#### Ordering food

Anything to drink?	May I take your order?
Are you ready to order?	Sorry, we don't have any.
Do you have any . . . ?	Would you like . . . ?
For here or to go?	Yes, please./No, thank you.
How about . . . ?	
I'd like . . .	

#### Wishing someone enjoyment

Enjoy!

#### Real Talk

I'll have . . .  
Let me see.

## EXPANSION Units 1–5

### VOCABULARY

#### Nouns

acne	dairy product	olive oil	strife
brain	escape	opportunity	substitute
brainpower	exception	pressure	tournament
brand	fat	protein	villain
butter	heart	screams	yogurt
calcium	ingredient	share	
cholesterol	margarine	sign	
corridor	obesity	slogan	

#### Verbs

ache	grab
admire	hang up
associate	protect
attend	recommend
attract	reduce
compete	rush
crawl out of (bed)	tolerate
eliminate	wake up
encourage	wave

### EXPRESSIONS

#### Idioms

do one's share	look forward to
fit in	make oneself a bite
get one's act together	



# Vocabulary

## 6 What Was It Like?

### VOCABULARY

#### Nouns

admission	heritage
artist	history
astronaut	message
calligraphy	museum
collection	navigator
dinosaur	planetarium
discount	safari
exhibit	sight
experience	space shuttle
gallery	technology
guide	ticket

#### Nouns— Kinds of technology

aeronautics  
astronomy  
electricity  
navigation  
robotics  
transportation

#### Verbs

admire  
call  
discover  
explore  
invite  
journey  
miss (something)  
prefer  
shake (hands)  
turn off  
win

#### Adjectives

amazing  
awesome  
closed  
contemporary  
daily  
delicious  
fantastic  
free  
natural  
original  
temporary  
vintage

### EXPRESSIONS

#### Expressions for asking for an opinion

How was it?  
What was it like?

#### Expression of regret

I'm so sorry (I missed it).

#### Real Talk

out of this world  
That's too bad.  
You did?

## 7 What Happened?

### VOCABULARY

#### Nouns

accident	motor vehicle
corner	passenger
driver	police officer
driver's license	scene
fault	stop sign
injury	SUV
insurance	traffic light
intersection	washing machine
mess	witness

#### Verbs

break  
cause  
crash  
happen  
hit  
put  
ride

#### Adjectives

angry	sad
busy	scared
happy	sleepy
hurt	surprised
injured	tired
nervous	worried
relieved	

#### Adverb

ago  
fortunately

#### Pronouns

anything  
no one  
nothing  
someone

### EXPRESSIONS

#### Request for a conversation

Can I talk to you?

#### Expression for telling about a problem

I have some good news and some bad news.

#### Real Talk

Don't lose your cool.  
It'll only take a minute.  
The thing is . . .  
What's up?



# Vocabulary

## 8 What's Wrong?

### VOCABULARY

#### Nouns

aspirin  
illness  
liquid  
medicine  
pain  
patient  
prescription  
symptom

#### Nouns—Illnesses

cold  
cough  
diarrhea  
earache  
fever  
flu  
headache  
high temperature  
sore throat  
stomachache  
toothache

#### Nouns—Parts of the body

arm                      neck  
back                     nose  
chest                    shoulder  
ear                        stomach  
eye                        throat  
foot, feet (*pl.*)      tooth, teeth (*pl.*)  
hand  
head  
knee  
leg  
mouth

#### Verbs

ache  
cough  
drink  
hurt  
rest  
sneeze  
vomit

#### Adjectives

awful  
common  
runny (nose)  
sick  
sore (throat)  
watery (eyes)

### EXPRESSIONS

#### Expressions for asking about a problem

What's the matter?  
What's wrong (with me)?

#### Expression of sympathy

That's a shame.

#### Real Talk

... and things like that  
I just did.  
Nothing much.

## 9 Let's Go Out

### VOCABULARY

#### Nouns

chore  
free-time activity  
obligation

#### Verbs—Activities

go bowling  
go for a drive  
go for a ride  
go out for dinner  
go shopping  
go swimming  
hang out

#### Verbs—Chores

babysit  
clean your room  
do the laundry  
dust  
iron the clothes  
mow the lawn  
take care of  
take out the garbage  
wash the dishes

### EXPRESSIONS

#### Making suggestions

Let's ...  
What should we do?  
Why don't ... ?

#### Expressing obligation

I have to ...

#### Real Talk

come on  
let down



# Vocabulary

## 10 It's a Bargain!

### VOCABULARY

#### Nouns

appliance	habit
bargain	housewares
brand	leather
department	makeup
electronics	perfume
escalator	pillowcase
eye shadow	price
furniture	sheet
gold	store directory

#### Nouns— Clothing and accessories

backpack	earrings	skirt
bag	jewelry	suit
belt	necklace	sunglasses
blouse	outerwear	sweatpants
boots	raincoat	sweatshirt
bracelet	ring	tie
casual wear	scarf, scarves (pl.)	umbrella
coat	shirt	wallet
dress	shoe	windbreaker

#### Verb

trust

#### Adjectives

cheap  
comfortable  
expensive

### EXPRESSIONS

#### Idioms

be on sale  
make payments

#### Real Talk

Do you mind + *-ing*?  
Not at all.  
Not really.  
stuff

## 11 There's No Comparison

### VOCABULARY

#### Nouns

competition	glass	oryx
creature	habitat	prey
diamond	height	sail
doorknob	karat	shark
element	marble	species
falcon	member	suite
faucet	mirror	wonder

#### Nouns— Measurement words

foot, feet (pl.)  
kilograms  
meter  
pounds

#### Adverbs

approximately  
especially

#### Verbs

bark  
exist  
fall out  
fear  
feature  
grow  
install  
last  
recharge  
reintroduce  
replace  
weigh

#### Adjectives

architectural	luxurious
convenient	popular
crowded	precious
dangerous	predatory
endangered	sensitive
extinct	smart
friendly	spectacular
gold-plated	tall
hard	worldwide

### EXPRESSIONS

#### Idiom

in the wild

#### Real Talk

What's new?



# Vocabulary

## EXPANSION Units 6–11

### VOCABULARY

#### Nouns

antique  
arch  
architect  
collection  
conquest  
enclosure  
entrance

landmark  
observation  
deck  
pyramid  
renovation  
tower

#### Verbs

acquire  
depart  
possess

#### Adjectives

bulletproof  
illuminated

#### Prepositions

along  
around  
in the middle of

### EXPRESSIONS

#### Idioms

a helping hand  
be named after  
cheer (someone) up

ease one's pain  
feel blue  
in times of trouble  
wait in line

## 12 It's Going to Be Fun!

### VOCABULARY

#### Nouns

art gallery  
coral reef  
cuisine  
culture  
ecosystem  
ecotourism  
habitat  
herd

jungle  
marine life  
mosquito  
oasis  
resort  
safari  
scuba diving  
theme park

tomb  
trail  
trekking  
variety  
view  
village  
wildlife

#### Verbs

carve  
experience  
explore  
hike

#### Adjectives

adventurous  
allergic  
ancient  
awesome  
coastal  
ecological  
ethnic

exotic  
inexpensive  
magnificent  
peaceful  
quiet  
thrilling  
unique

### EXPRESSIONS

#### Idiom

come face to face (with)  
come into contact (with)

#### Real Talk

Actually  
off the beaten track



## 13 What's the Weather Like?

### VOCABULARY

#### Nouns

barometer	leaf, leaves ( <i>pl.</i> )
cherry blossom	rain
damage	season
degree	snow
display	spring
fall	summer
forecast	temperature
gulf	weather
humidity	winter
hurricane	

#### Verbs

cause  
pass over  
rain  
snow  
vary

#### Adjectives

breathtaking  
magnificent  
unpredictable

#### Adjectives— Weather words

cloudy  
cold  
cool  
dry  
hot  
sunny  
warm  
windy

#### Adverbs

absolutely  
extremely  
partly (cloudy)  
probably  
quite

#### Preposition

below

### EXPRESSIONS

#### Asking about the weather

What's the weather like . . . ?

#### Real Talk

I hear  
It depends

## 14 Could You Do Me a Favor?

### VOCABULARY

#### Nouns

gathering  
napkin  
snack  
voice

#### Verbs

lend  
lower  
borrow

### EXPRESSIONS

#### Making and responding to requests

Certainly.  
Could you . . . ?  
I'm sorry.  
No problem.  
Of course.  
Sure.  
Will you . . . ?  
Would you . . . ?

#### Offering help and responding

Let me . . .  
No, that's all right.

#### Interrupting

Excuse me.

#### Telephone language

Can I take a message?  
Did you try his cell phone?  
Hello. This is . . .  
May I speak to . . . ?  
(He) doesn't answer.

#### Real Talk

I have no idea.  
Will you do me a favor?



# Vocabulary

## 15 Today's News

### VOCABULARY

#### Nouns

anaconda  
attraction  
crowd  
device  
electric current  
headphones  
hero  
hip

knife  
lightning  
parrot  
scream  
snake  
storm  
wire  
wound

#### Verbs

attack  
be fired  
burn  
deliver  
kick out  
manage  
overpower  
remember

risk  
rush  
shock  
shriek  
warn

#### Adjectives

empty  
improper  
strong  
stuck

### EXPRESSIONS

#### Idioms

break down  
get control of

#### Real Talk

keep your cool

## 16 Have You Ever . . . ?

### VOCABULARY

#### Nouns

cage  
camel  
cliff hanging  
desert safari  
hang gliding  
harness  
rope  
shark diving  
volcano  
zebra

#### Verbs

dive  
knock  
throw

#### Adjectives

frightening  
weird

#### Adverb

up close

### EXPRESSIONS

#### Idiom

Have you ever heard of . . . ?

#### Real Talk

definitely  
scared to death  
To be honest  
You're out of your mind!





# Vocabulary

## EXPANSION Units 12–16

### VOCABULARY

#### Nouns

achievement	fascination	rifle
agreement	fighter	roar
belief	fortune	sailor
billionaire	happiness	success
cab	height	tank
candidate	industry	war
canoe	law	wealth
charity	philanthropist	4x4
effort	rickshaw	

#### Verbs

cross  
cruise  
drop out  
enroll  
establish  
expand  
found  
give away  
invest  
raft  
recognize  
set up  
snowmobile  
stroll  
support  
trek

#### Adjectives

academic  
entire  
generous  
humanitarian  
reliable  
respected  
shy  
sociable  
successful

#### Prepositions

around  
beyond  
through

### EXPRESSIONS

#### Idioms

break the law  
come into contact with  
team up with  
the world over



# Unit 1 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 1:	Things that I didn't like very much:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Things that I found easy in Unit 1:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 1:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Unit 1 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
greet people and say goodbye			
introduce myself and others			
ask for and give personal information			
express thanks and apologize			
ask for and give directions			
use the simple present of the verb <i>be</i> in the affirmative and negative and in <i>yes/no</i> questions and short answers			
use the information questions <i>how, what, when, where, who, and why</i>			
use prepositions of place			

My five favorite new words from Unit 1:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 1:
_____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• read through the unit again</li> <li>• listen to the audio material</li> <li>• study the grammar and functions from the unit again</li> <li>• ask your teacher for help</li> </ul>
_____	
_____	

## Unit 2 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 2:	Things that I didn't like very much:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Things that I found easy in Unit 2:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 2:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Unit 2 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
express approval and disapproval			
talk about present ongoing activities			
use the present progressive in the affirmative and negative and in information questions, <i>yes/no</i> questions, and short answers			
use the imperative for commands and instructions			
use prepositions of place			

My five favorite new words from Unit 2:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 2:
_____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• read through the unit again</li> <li>• listen to the audio material</li> <li>• study the grammar and functions from the unit again</li> <li>• ask your teacher for help</li> </ul>
_____	
_____	





# Unit 3 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 3:	Things that I didn't like very much:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Things that I found easy in Unit 3:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 3:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Unit 3 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
describe professions			
talk about professional goals			
use the simple present in the affirmative and negative			
ask <i>wh-</i> questions in the simple present			
use the verb <i>want</i> + infinitive			
use the relative pronouns <i>who, that, and which</i>			

My five favorite new words from Unit 3:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 3:
_____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• read through the unit again</li> <li>• listen to the audio material</li> <li>• study the grammar and functions from the unit again</li> <li>• ask your teacher for help</li> </ul>
_____	
_____	

# Unit 4 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 4:	Things that I didn't like very much:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Things that I found easy in Unit 4:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 4:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Unit 4 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
describe daily activities and routines			
ask about and tell how often one does activities			
talk about abilities			
describe hobbies			
ask questions with <i>how often</i>			
use the frequency expressions <i>once a week</i> , etc.			
use the adverbs of frequency <i>always, often, never, usually, sometimes</i> , and <i>seldom</i>			
use the expression <i>know how to</i>			
use gerunds and infinitives after verbs			

My five favorite new words from Unit 4:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 4:
_____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• read through the unit again</li> <li>• listen to the audio material</li> <li>• study the grammar and functions from the unit again</li> <li>• ask your teacher for help</li> </ul>
_____	
_____	



# Unit 5 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 5:	Things that I didn't like very much:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Things that I found easy in Unit 5:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 5:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Unit 5 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
talk about foods			
order from a menu			
express preferences with <i>would like</i>			
use count and noncount nouns			
use the expressions of quantity <i>some</i> and <i>any</i>			
use partitives			
use <i>too</i> and <i>enough</i>			

My five favorite new words from Unit 5:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 5:
_____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• read through the unit again</li> <li>• listen to the audio material</li> <li>• study the grammar and functions from the unit again</li> <li>• ask your teacher for help</li> </ul>
_____	
_____	

## Unit 6 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 6:	Things that I didn't like very much:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Things that I found easy in Unit 6:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 6:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Unit 6 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
ask and answer questions about past activities			
describe past activities			
express an opinion			
use the simple past of <i>be</i> in the affirmative and negative and in information questions, <i>yes/no</i> questions, and short answers			
use the simple past of regular and irregular verbs in the affirmative and negative and in information questions, <i>yes/no</i> questions, and short answers			
use intensifiers with adjectives			

My five favorite new words from Unit 6:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 6:
_____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• read through the unit again</li> <li>• listen to the audio material</li> <li>• study the grammar and functions from the unit again</li> <li>• ask your teacher for help</li> </ul>
_____	
_____	





# Unit 7 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 7:	Things that I didn't like very much:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Things that I found easy in Unit 7:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 7:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Unit 7 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
retell an event			
express feelings			
give reasons with <i>why</i> and <i>because</i>			
show agreement with <i>so</i> and <i>neither</i>			
use <i>there was/there were</i>			
use the adverb <i>ago</i>			
use the pronouns <i>someone, no one, nothing, and anything</i>			
use the conjunctions <i>because</i> and <i>so</i>			

My five favorite new words from Unit 7:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 7:
_____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• read through the unit again</li> <li>• listen to the audio material</li> <li>• study the grammar and functions from the unit again</li> <li>• ask your teacher for help</li> </ul>
_____	
_____	

# Unit 8 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 8:	Things that I didn't like very much:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Things that I found easy in Unit 8:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 8:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Unit 8 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
ask and talk about health			
name parts of the body			
talk about illnesses and their symptoms			
make suggestions and give advice			
use <i>should/shouldn't</i>			
use clauses with <i>when</i>			
use subject/object pronouns and possessive adjectives/pronouns			

My five favorite new words from Unit 8:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 8:
_____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• read through the unit again</li> <li>• listen to the audio material</li> <li>• study the grammar and functions from the unit again</li> <li>• ask your teacher for help</li> </ul>
_____	
_____	



# Unit 9 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 9:	Things that I didn't like very much:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Things that I found easy in Unit 9:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 9:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Unit 9 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
talk about free-time activities and chores			
make suggestions			
express obligation			
make excuses			
use <i>should</i> , <i>why don't/doesn't</i> , and <i>let's</i> for suggestions			
use the construction <i>go + verb + -ing</i>			
use <i>have to/had to</i> and <i>don't/didn't have to</i>			
use <i>must</i> and <i>mustn't</i> for obligation and prohibition			

My five favorite new words from Unit 9:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 9:
_____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• read through the unit again</li> <li>• listen to the audio material</li> <li>• study the grammar and functions from the unit again</li> <li>• ask your teacher for help</li> </ul>
_____	
_____	

# Unit 10 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 10:	Things that I didn't like very much:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Things that I found easy in Unit 10:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 10:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Unit 10 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
talk about shopping			
identify possessions			
express preferences			
use possessive adjectives			
use possessive pronouns			
use the question word <i>whose</i>			
use the pronoun <i>one/ones</i>			
use the quantitative <i>too</i>			
use the modal verbs <i>can, may, could, and might</i>			

My five favorite new words from Unit 10:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 10:
_____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• read through the unit again</li> <li>• listen to the audio material</li> <li>• study the grammar and functions from the unit again</li> <li>• ask your teacher for help</li> </ul>
_____	
_____	





# Unit 11 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 11:	Things that I didn't like very much:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Things that I found easy in Unit 11:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 11:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Unit 11 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/ practice more.
make comparisons			
state opinions			
talk about interesting facts			
use the comparative and superlative forms of adjectives			
express cause and effect with <i>so...that</i> and <i>such...that</i>			

My five favorite new words from Unit 11:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 11:
_____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• read through the unit again</li> <li>• listen to the audio material</li> <li>• study the grammar and functions from the unit again</li> <li>• ask your teacher for help</li> </ul>
_____	
_____	



# Unit 12 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 12:	Things that I didn't like very much:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Things that I found easy in Unit 12:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 12:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Unit 12 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
ask about and describe vacations			
plan a vacation			
use the future with <i>be going to</i> in the affirmative and negative and in <i>yes/no</i> questions and short answers			
ask information questions with <i>be going to</i>			
use adjectives in the correct position			
use adverbs of manner			

My five favorite new words from Unit 12:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 12:
_____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• read through the unit again</li> <li>• listen to the audio material</li> <li>• study the grammar and functions from the unit again</li> <li>• ask your teacher for help</li> </ul>
_____	
_____	



# Unit 13 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 13:	Things that I didn't like very much:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Things that I found easy in Unit 13:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 13:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Unit 13 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
talk about the weather			
talk about seasons			
talk about future activities			
make predictions			
use the future with <i>will</i> in the affirmative and negative and in <i>yes/no</i> questions and short answers			
ask information questions with <i>will</i>			
use the conditional with present and future forms			

My five favorite new words from Unit 13:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 13:
_____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• read through the unit again</li> <li>• listen to the audio material</li> <li>• study the grammar and functions from the unit again</li> <li>• ask your teacher for help</li> </ul>
_____	
_____	



# Unit 14 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 14:	Things that I didn't like very much:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Things that I found easy in Unit 14:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 14:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Unit 14 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
make and respond to requests			
make and respond to offers			
give and take phone messages			
use the modal verb <i>will</i> in expressions			
use <i>can, could, will, and would</i>			
use <i>I'll</i> and <i>Let me</i>			
use the construction <i>want</i> + object noun/pronoun + infinitive			
use the construction <i>tell</i> and <i>ask</i> + object noun/pronoun + infinitive			

My five favorite new words from Unit 14:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 14:
_____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• read through the unit again</li> <li>• listen to the audio material</li> <li>• study the grammar and functions from the unit again</li> <li>• ask your teacher for help</li> </ul>
_____	
_____	





# Unit 15 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 15:	Things that I didn't like very much:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Things that I found easy in Unit 15:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 15:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Unit 15 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
talk about the news			
ask and answer questions about past ongoing activities			
tell narrative stories in the past			
use the past progressive in the affirmative and negative and in <i>yes/no</i> questions and short answers			
use the past progressive + <i>when</i>			
use adverbs of degree			
use <i>could</i> and <i>was/were able to</i>			

My five favorite new words from Unit 15:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 15:
_____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• read through the unit again</li> <li>• listen to the audio material</li> <li>• study the grammar and functions from the unit again</li> <li>• ask your teacher for help</li> </ul>
_____	
_____	

# Unit 16 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 16:	Things that I didn't like very much:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Things that I found easy in Unit 16:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 16:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Unit 16 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
talk about activities I have and haven't done			
use the present perfect in the affirmative and negative and in <i>yes/no</i> questions and short answers			
use the present perfect versus the simple past			
use the present tenses and the simple past correctly			

My five favorite new words from Unit 16:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 16:
_____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• read through the unit again</li> <li>• listen to the audio material</li> <li>• study the grammar and functions from the unit again</li> <li>• ask your teacher for help</li> </ul>
_____	
_____	



# Irregular Verbs

Base Form	Simple Past	Past Participle
be	was / were	been
become	became	become
blow	blew	blown
buy	bought	bought
come	came	come
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
get	got	gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
know	knew	known
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
wake (up)	woke (up)	woken (up)
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written



# SUPERGOAL 2 Audio Track List

## CD1

Track	Unit	Student Book Section
2	Unit 1	1 Listen and Discuss
3	Unit 1	4 Listening
4	Unit 1	5 Pronunciation
5	Unit 1	6 Conversation
6	Unit 1	8 Reading
7	Unit 2	1 Listen and Discuss
8	Unit 2	2 Pair Work
9	Unit 2	4 Listening
10	Unit 2	5 Pronunciation
11	Unit 2	6 Conversation
12	Unit 2	8 Reading
13	Unit 3	1 Listen and Discuss
14	Unit 3	2 Pair Work
15	Unit 3	4 Listening
16	Unit 3	5 Pronunciation
17	Unit 3	6 Conversation
18	Unit 3	8 Reading
19	Unit 4	1 Listen and Discuss
20	Unit 4	2 Pair Work
21	Unit 4	4 Listening
22	Unit 4	5 Pronunciation
23	Unit 4	6 Conversation
24	Unit 4	8 Reading
25	Unit 5	1 Listen and Discuss
26	Unit 5	2 Pair Work
27	Unit 5	4 Listening
28	Unit 5	5 Pronunciation
29	Unit 5	6 Conversation
30	Unit 5	8 Reading
31	EXPANSION	2 Reading
32	Units 1–5	3 Reading
33		6 Chant Along

## CD2

2	Unit 6	1 Listen and Discuss
3	Unit 6	2 Pair Work
4	Unit 6	4 Listening
5	Unit 6	5 Pronunciation
6	Unit 6	6 Conversation
7	Unit 6	8 Reading
8	Unit 7	1 Listen and Discuss
9	Unit 7	2 Pair Work
10	Unit 7	4 Listening
11	Unit 7	5 Pronunciation
12	Unit 7	6 Conversation
13	Unit 7	8 Reading
14	Unit 8	1 Listen and Discuss
15	Unit 8	2 Pair Work
16	Unit 8	4 Listening
17	Unit 8	5 Pronunciation
18	Unit 8	6 Conversation
19	Unit 8	8 Reading

20	Unit 9	1 Listen and Discuss
21	Unit 9	2 Pair Work
22	Unit 9	4 Listening
23	Unit 9	5 Pronunciation
24	Unit 9	6 Conversation
25	Unit 9	8 Reading
26	Unit 10	1 Listen and Discuss
27	Unit 10	2 Pair Work
28	Unit 10	4 Listening
29	Unit 10	5 Pronunciation
30	Unit 10	6 Conversation
31	Unit 10	8 Reading
32	Unit 11	1 Listen and Discuss
33	Unit 11	2 Pair Work
34	Unit 11	4 Listening
35	Unit 11	5 Pronunciation
36	Unit 11	6 Conversation
37	Unit 11	8 Reading
38	EXPANSION	2 Reading
39	Units 6–11	4 Chant Along

## CD3

2	Unit 12	1 Listen and Discuss
3	Unit 12	2 Pair Work
4	Unit 12	4 Listening
5	Unit 12	5 Pronunciation
6	Unit 12	6 Conversation
7	Unit 12	8 Reading
8	Unit 13	1 Listen and Discuss
9	Unit 13	2 Pair Work
10	Unit 13	4 Listening
11	Unit 13	5 Pronunciation
12	Unit 13	6 Conversation
13	Unit 13	8 Reading
14	Unit 14	1 Listen and Discuss
15	Unit 14	2 Pair Work
16	Unit 14	4 Listening
17	Unit 14	5 Pronunciation
18	Unit 14	6 Conversation
19	Unit 14	8 Reading
20	Unit 15	1 Listen and Discuss
21	Unit 15	2 Pair Work
22	Unit 15	4 Listening
23	Unit 15	5 Pronunciation
24	Unit 15	6 Conversation
25	Unit 15	8 Reading
26	Unit 16	1 Listen and Discuss
27	Unit 16	2 Pair Work
28	Unit 16	4 Listening
29	Unit 16	5 Pronunciation
30	Unit 16	6 Conversation
31	Unit 16	8 Reading
32	EXPANSION	2 Reading
33	Units 12–16	4 Chant Along
34		7 Chant Along





## SuperGoal 2 Workbook

*SuperGoal Series* Copyright © 2009 by McGraw-Hill Education

Adaptation Copyright © 2024 by McGraw-Hill Education (UK) Limited

Published by arrangement with McGraw Hill LLC

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. NO PART OF THIS BOOK MAY BE REPRODUCED OR TRANSMITTED IN ANY FORM OR BY ANY MEANS, ELECTRONIC OR MECHANICAL, INCLUDING PHOTOCOPYING, RECORDING OR BY INFORMATION STORAGE AND RETRIEVAL SYSTEMS, WITHOUT PERMISSION IN WRITING FROM MCGRAW HILL.

ISBN: 9781398928480

Contributing Writer: Kevin Sharpe

*Publisher:* Jorge Rodríguez Hernández

*Editorial director:* Anita Raducanu

*Art direction:* Heloisa Yara Tiburtius

*Interior design and production:* Page2, LLC

*Cover design:* Page2, LLC

*Photo coordinator:* Kevin Sharpe

Photo Credits: The Photo Credits section for this book on page 261 is considered an extension of the copyright page.

© 2024. Exclusive rights by McGraw-Hill Education (UK) Limited for manufacture and export. This book cannot be re-exported from the country to which it is sold by McGraw-Hill Education (UK) Limited.



[www.mheducation.com](http://www.mheducation.com)



وزارة التعليم  
Ministry of Education  
2024 - 1446

@saudienglish

SUPER

# GOAL 2

WORKBOOK

MANUEL DOS SANTOS

Mc  
Graw  
Hill



وزارة التعليم  
Ministry of Education  
2024-1446

@saudienglish

# Contents

Term 1	Unit	<b>1</b>	Are You Here on Vacation?	<b>185</b>
	Unit	<b>2</b>	What Are They Making?	<b>189</b>
	Unit	<b>3</b>	Who's Who	<b>193</b>
	Unit	<b>4</b>	Favorite Pastimes	<b>197</b>
	Unit	<b>5</b>	Is There Any Ice Cream?	<b>201</b>
			EXPANSION Units 1–5	<b>205</b>
Term 2	Unit	<b>6</b>	What Was It Like?	<b>209</b>
	Unit	<b>7</b>	What Happened?	<b>213</b>
	Unit	<b>8</b>	What's Wrong?	<b>217</b>
	Unit	<b>9</b>	Let's Go Out	<b>221</b>
	Unit	<b>10</b>	It's a Bargain!	<b>225</b>
	Unit	<b>11</b>	There's No Comparison	<b>229</b>
			EXPANSION Units 6–11	<b>233</b>
Term 3	Unit	<b>12</b>	It's Going to Be Fun!	<b>237</b>
	Unit	<b>13</b>	What's the Weather Like?	<b>241</b>
	Unit	<b>14</b>	Could You Do Me a Favor?	<b>245</b>
	Unit	<b>15</b>	Today's News	<b>249</b>
	Unit	<b>16</b>	Have You Ever...?	<b>253</b>
			EXPANSION Units 12–16	<b>257</b>



# 1 Are You Here on Vacation?

Term 1

**A** Complete the conversations in the hotel. Use the words in the box or use your own ideas.

I'm William. But my nickname's Bill.  
Great. How about you?

You're welcome.  
Bye. Take care.

Hello. How are you?



1. \_\_\_\_\_

Thank you.



2. \_\_\_\_\_

See you tomorrow!



3. \_\_\_\_\_

I'm Edson.  
Everyone calls me Eddie.



4. \_\_\_\_\_

**B** You are on vacation. Fill out the information for your hotel.

PLAZA  
HOTEL

Last Name: \_\_\_\_\_

First Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Street Address: \_\_\_\_\_

City/State: \_\_\_\_\_ Country: \_\_\_\_\_

Zip Code: \_\_\_\_\_ Telephone Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Email Address: \_\_\_\_\_



# 1 Are You Here on Vacation?

**C** Read the conversation. Complete the sentences with a form of the verb **be**. You can use contractions. Use negative forms when you see (**not**).

**Mr. Akina:** Hello. My name (1) \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Akina.  
What (2) \_\_\_\_\_ wrong?

**John:** Hello, Mr. Akina. My suitcases (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (not) here.

**Mr. Akina:** What color (4) \_\_\_\_\_ they?

**John:** They (5) \_\_\_\_\_ black.

**Mr. Akina:** (6) \_\_\_\_\_ they big?

**John:** One (7) \_\_\_\_\_ big. The other one  
(8) \_\_\_\_\_ (not) big.

**Mr. Akina:** (9) \_\_\_\_\_ that your suitcase?

**John:** No, it (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (not).

**Mr. Akina:** (11) \_\_\_\_\_ you here on vacation?

**John:** Yes, I (12) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Mr. Akina:** Where (13) \_\_\_\_\_ you from?

**John:** I (14) \_\_\_\_\_ from Los Angeles.

**Mr. Akina:** Well, there (15) \_\_\_\_\_ three more flights from  
Los Angeles today.

**John:** (16) \_\_\_\_\_ my suitcases on a different flight?

**Mr. Akina:** I don't know. What (17) \_\_\_\_\_ the name of your hotel?

**John:** It (18) \_\_\_\_\_ the Royal Hawaiian.

**Mr. Akina:** (19) \_\_\_\_\_ that near the airport?

**John:** No, it (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (not).

It (21) \_\_\_\_\_ on the  
other side of the island.

**Mr. Akina:** I can call you when we find your  
suitcases.

**John:** But I need them now!

**Mr. Akina:** I (22) \_\_\_\_\_ sorry. That  
(23) \_\_\_\_\_ all I can do.  
They simply (24) \_\_\_\_\_  
(not) here right now.

**John:** OK. Thanks, Mr. Akina.



**D** Make each statement a **yes/no** question. Then give a short answer.



**Mahmoud isn't in the kitchen.**

**Q:** *Is Mahmoud in the kitchen?*

**A:** *No, he isn't.*

1. Aisha and Fadwa are at the mall.

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

2. The hotel is on the beach.

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

3. They're not on vacation.

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

4. The restaurant is in the hotel.

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

5. I'm on the phone with my friend.

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

**E** Write complete questions. Then answer the questions for yourself.



**where / you from?**

**Q:** *Where are you from?*

**A:** *I'm from Riyadh.*

1. where / your father from?

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

2. what / favorite vacation place?

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

3. how old / you?

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

4. who / your English teacher?

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

5. why / your brother at home and not at school?

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

6. when / your vacation?

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_



# 1 Are You Here on Vacation?

**F** Complete the conversation with your information.

**Desk clerk:** Hello. Welcome to the beautiful Beach Resort Hotel. How are you today?

**You:** (1) \_\_\_\_\_

**Desk clerk:** Fine. Thank you. Do you have a reservation?

**You:** Yes, I do. My name (2) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Desk clerk:** How do you spell your last name?

**You:** (3) \_\_\_\_\_

**Desk clerk:** Are you here on vacation?

**You:** (4) \_\_\_\_\_

**Desk clerk:** That's great. I have your reservation here. Are you here for the weekend?

**You:** (5) \_\_\_\_\_

**Desk clerk:** I need your email address, please.

**You:** (6) \_\_\_\_\_

**Desk clerk:** Thank you.

**You:** Where (7) \_\_\_\_\_?

**Desk clerk:** It's next to the elevator.

**You:** When (8) \_\_\_\_\_?

**Desk clerk:** 6:00 A.M.

**You:** Thank you for your help.

**Desk clerk:** You're welcome. And enjoy your stay with us.



## **G** WRITING

You want to make reservations at the Beach Resort Hotel. You are on their website. Complete the form to make your reservations.

### **Beach Resort Hotel Online Reservation Form**

Last Name: \_\_\_\_\_

First Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Birth: \_\_\_\_\_

Arrival Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Number of Days: \_\_\_\_\_

Number of Rooms: \_\_\_\_\_

Credit Card Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Email Address: \_\_\_\_\_



# 2 What Are They Making?

**A** Look at the pictures. Match the two parts of the sentences.



1. The camera operator \_\_\_\_

2. The director \_\_\_\_

3. The film editor \_\_\_\_

4. The actors \_\_\_\_

5. The stuntman \_\_\_\_

a. is cutting the film scene.

b. is telling the actors what to do.

c. are doing a martial arts scene.

d. is holding the camera.

e. is standing on the plane.





## 2 What Are They Making?

**B** Write the questions and answers. There may be more than one answer.



where / they / go

Q: *Where are they going?*

A: *They're going to class.*

1. what / they / do

Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

2. what / he / do

Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

3. who / write / on the board

Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

4. where / you / go

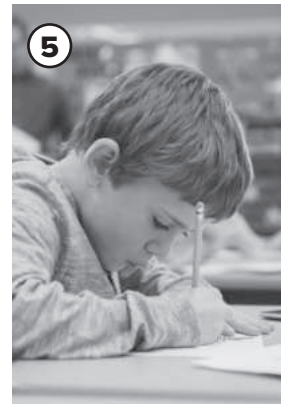
Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

5. what / he / do

Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_



**C** What are the actors doing? Use short answers. For **no** answers, write correct statements.



**Is the sheriff eating a pizza?**

*No, he isn't. He's eating a burger.*

1. Is the cowboy reading a book?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Are the men wearing hats?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Is the mayor taking an apple?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Is the deputy eating?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Is the deputy standing?

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Is the director walking to the table?

\_\_\_\_\_

7. Is the mayor wearing jeans?

\_\_\_\_\_



## 2 What Are They Making?

**D** Find the mistake in each sentence. Then rewrite each sentence correctly.

1. **Incorrect:** I am wanting a new cell phone.

**Correct:** \_\_\_\_\_

2. **Incorrect:** The pizza is smelling good.

**Correct:** \_\_\_\_\_

3. **Incorrect:** I watch the news on television tonight after dinner.

**Correct:** \_\_\_\_\_

4. **Incorrect:** I am seeing a bird in the tree.

**Correct:** \_\_\_\_\_

5. **Incorrect:** That milk is tasting bad!

**Correct:** \_\_\_\_\_

6. **Incorrect:** I go to the library after school tomorrow.

**Correct:** \_\_\_\_\_

7. **Incorrect:** The director is hearing the actors in the studio.

**Correct:** \_\_\_\_\_

8. **Incorrect:** Are you liking your martial arts teacher?

**Correct:** \_\_\_\_\_

### **E** WRITING

Write about what people are doing now.  
Answer the questions.

1. What are you doing now?
2. What are your classmates doing?
3. What do you think your family members are doing?

*It is \_\_\_\_\_ o'clock.*

*What are we doing?*

# 3 Who's Who

**A** Look carefully at the photos of occupations. Answer the questions. Use the words in the box.

<b>doctor</b>	<b>marketing manager</b>	<b>dentist</b>
<b>salesperson</b>	<b>graphic designer</b>	<b>professor</b>



**What does she do?**

*She's a marketing manager.*

**Where does she work?**

*She works in an advertising firm.*

**1. What does he do?**

\_\_\_\_\_

Where does he work?

\_\_\_\_\_

**2. What does she do?**

\_\_\_\_\_

Where does she work?

\_\_\_\_\_

**3. What does he do?**

\_\_\_\_\_

Where does he work?

\_\_\_\_\_

**4. What does she do?**

\_\_\_\_\_

Who does she work for?

\_\_\_\_\_

**5. What does he do?**

\_\_\_\_\_

Where does he work?

\_\_\_\_\_





### 3 Who's Who

**B** Write two questions for each answer. Use **Wh-** questions.



**Q:** *Who works in a bank?*

**Q:** *Where does Khalid work?*

**A:** Khalid works in a bank.

1. **Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** Walid is a journalist at the newspaper.

2. **Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** Rasheed is an executive in an advertising firm.

3. **Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** Tariq and Adnan take the bus to school in the morning.

4. **Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** Ali plays football in the park after school on Thursdays.

5. **Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** They speak English at home.

**C** Complete the conversations.

1. **Asma:** What does your father do?

**Maha:** He's a teacher. He \_\_\_\_\_ at the high school.

2. **Yahya:** What does your cousin do?

**Faris:** He plays football. He's a professional football \_\_\_\_\_.

3. **Farah:** What does Mariam do?

**Noura:** She's a nurse. She \_\_\_\_\_ at the hospital.

4. **Mona:** My brother's a \_\_\_\_\_.

**Hanan:** When does he write?

**Mona:** He \_\_\_\_\_ every morning.

5. **Faisal:** My brothers are engineers.

**Yousef:** Really! My brother \_\_\_\_\_, too.

**D** Look at the picture. How do the people get to work? Complete the sentences.



**The doctor** *walks to work* \_\_\_\_\_.

1. The artists \_\_\_\_\_.

2. The chef \_\_\_\_\_.

3. The photographer \_\_\_\_\_.

4. The mechanics \_\_\_\_\_.

5. The businessmen \_\_\_\_\_.



# 4 Favorite Pastimes

**A** Look at the photos. Answer the questions. Use the words in the box.

usually / travel  
sometimes / paint

often / hang out with friends  
usually / eat out

always / play  
always / work out



**What do they do on vacation?**

*They usually eat out.*

1. What does Fayeze do after school?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. What do Brian and Jason do on the weekend?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. What does Kim do in her free time?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. What do they do on vacation in the winter?

\_\_\_\_\_ in the mountains.

5. What does Omar do on the weekend?

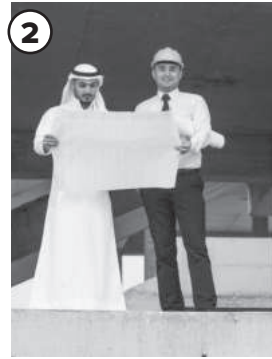
\_\_\_\_\_





# 4 Favorite Pastimes

**B** Write sentences with **know how to**.



**He's a pilot.**

*He knows how to fly a plane.*

1. He's a chef.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. He's an architect.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. They're golf players.

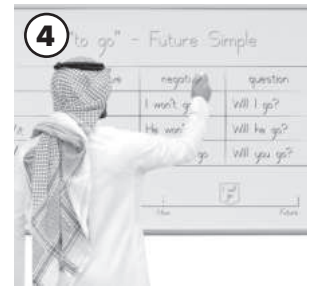
\_\_\_\_\_

4. He's an English teacher.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. He's a photographer.

\_\_\_\_\_



**C** Write sentences with **know how to**. Write about yourself. Use the words in the box or your own ideas.

<p><b>speak English</b></p> <p><b>play volleyball</b></p>	<p><b>cook</b></p> <p><b>paint</b></p>	<p><b>ride a bike</b></p> <p><b>use a computer</b></p>
---	--	--

**Things I Know How to Do**

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**Things I Don't Know How to Do**

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**D** Complete the questions and answers. Use **How often?** and these frequency expressions: **every day, once a week, twice a week, three times a week.**

	Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday
Speak English	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Play football	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Visit relatives						✓	✓
Read the Qur'an	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Clean my room						✓	

**Ibrahim:** How often do you read the Holy Qur'an?

**Ali:** I read the Holy Qur'an **(1)** \_\_\_\_\_.

**Ibrahim:** **(2)** \_\_\_\_\_?

**Ali:** I speak English **(3)** \_\_\_\_\_.

**Ibrahim:** **(4)** \_\_\_\_\_?

**Ali:** I visit relatives **(5)** \_\_\_\_\_.

**Ibrahim:** **(6)** \_\_\_\_\_ do you play football?

**Ali:** I play football **(7)** \_\_\_\_\_.

**Ibrahim:** **(8)** \_\_\_\_\_?

**Ali:** I clean my room **(9)** \_\_\_\_\_.

**E** Rewrite each sentence. Put the adverb of frequency in the correct place.



**(usually) I drink a lot of coffee.**

*I usually drink a lot of coffee.* \_\_\_\_\_

1. (often) We eat at the food court in the mall.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. (always) Jamal is late for school.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. (never) They hang out with other people.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. (sometimes) What do you do after school?

\_\_\_\_\_



## 4 Favorite Pastimes

### F READING

Read the paragraph.

Fahd goes to school Sunday through Thursday. He works out three days a week on Monday, Wednesday, and Thursday. He stays healthy all year, and he's not sick a lot. He also hangs out with his friends after school and on weekends. They go to the mall every Thursday, and they usually eat lunch in the food court. He loves the pizza there.

One time he got Indian food, but he didn't like it. So now he just eats pizza. He and his friends like to chat online a lot, too. But he has to do his homework before he can go online. Some of his friends send him a lot of messages, but his friend Qassim only sends him one or two messages a week. Qassim doesn't have a lot of free time to go online. Qassim goes to swimming practice every afternoon, then he does his homework and goes to bed early. He can only go to the mall once or twice a month. But tomorrow, Qassim, Fahd, and their friends are going to hang out at the food court. They want to try the food at the new Indian restaurant!



Write **T** for **True** or **F** for **False**.

- \_\_\_\_\_ Fahd goes to school five times a week.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Fahd works out twice a week.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Fahd and his friends seldom eat lunch in the food court when they're at the mall.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Qassim often sends Fahd emails.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Fahd never hangs out with Qassim.

### G WRITING

List the activities you do in your free time. Then write a paragraph about how often you do the activities. Use frequency expressions and adverbs of frequency.

#### FREE-TIME ACTIVITIES

**Weekends**

**Weekdays**

**Vacations**

_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

*My Free Time*

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

# 5 Is There Any Ice Cream?

**A** Unscramble the food words.



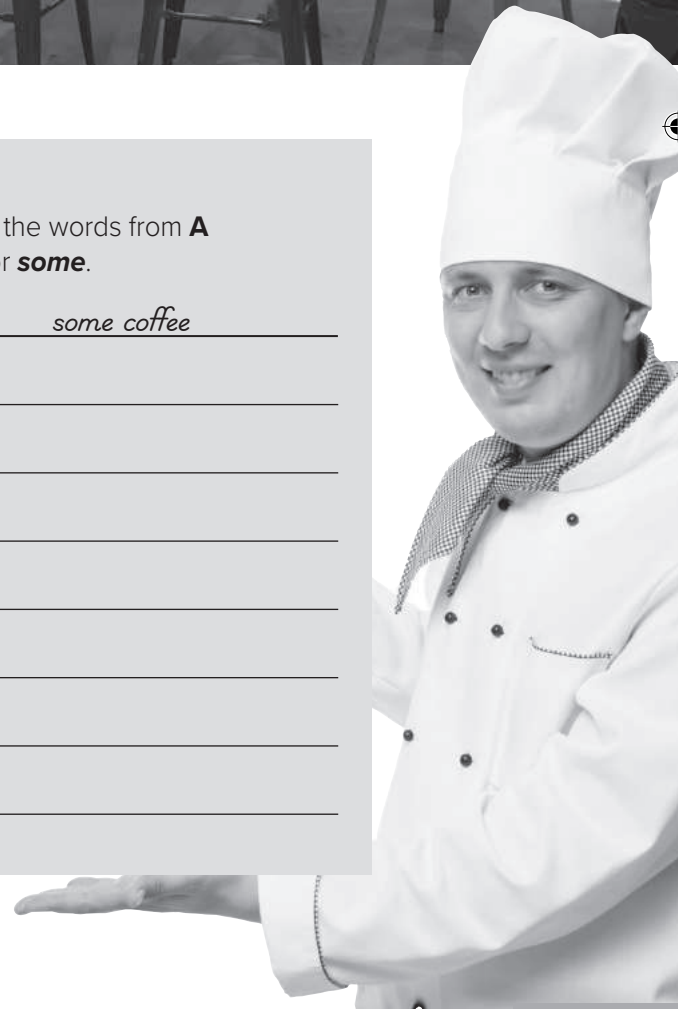
- ① eeffoc
- ② crie
- ③ optato
- ④ uijce
- ⑤ whscanid
- ⑥ klim
- ⑦ ctraro
- ⑧ tapsa



- 1. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8. \_\_\_\_\_

**B** Rewrite the words from **A** with **a** or **some**.

- 1. \_\_\_\_\_ *some coffee*
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8. \_\_\_\_\_





# 5 Is There Any Ice Cream?

**C** Write about the foods.



**?** juice

**Q:** *Is there any juice?* \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** *No, there isn't any juice.* \_\_\_\_\_

1. pasta

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

2. eggs

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

3. ice cream

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

4. milk

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

**?** pineapple

**Q:** *Are there any pineapples?* \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** *Yes, there are some pineapples.* \_\_\_\_\_

5. ketchup

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

6. steaks

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

7. cookies

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

8. soft drinks

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

# 5 Is There Any Ice Cream?

**D** Write the sentences in the correct place to form a conversation.

And a glass of milk.

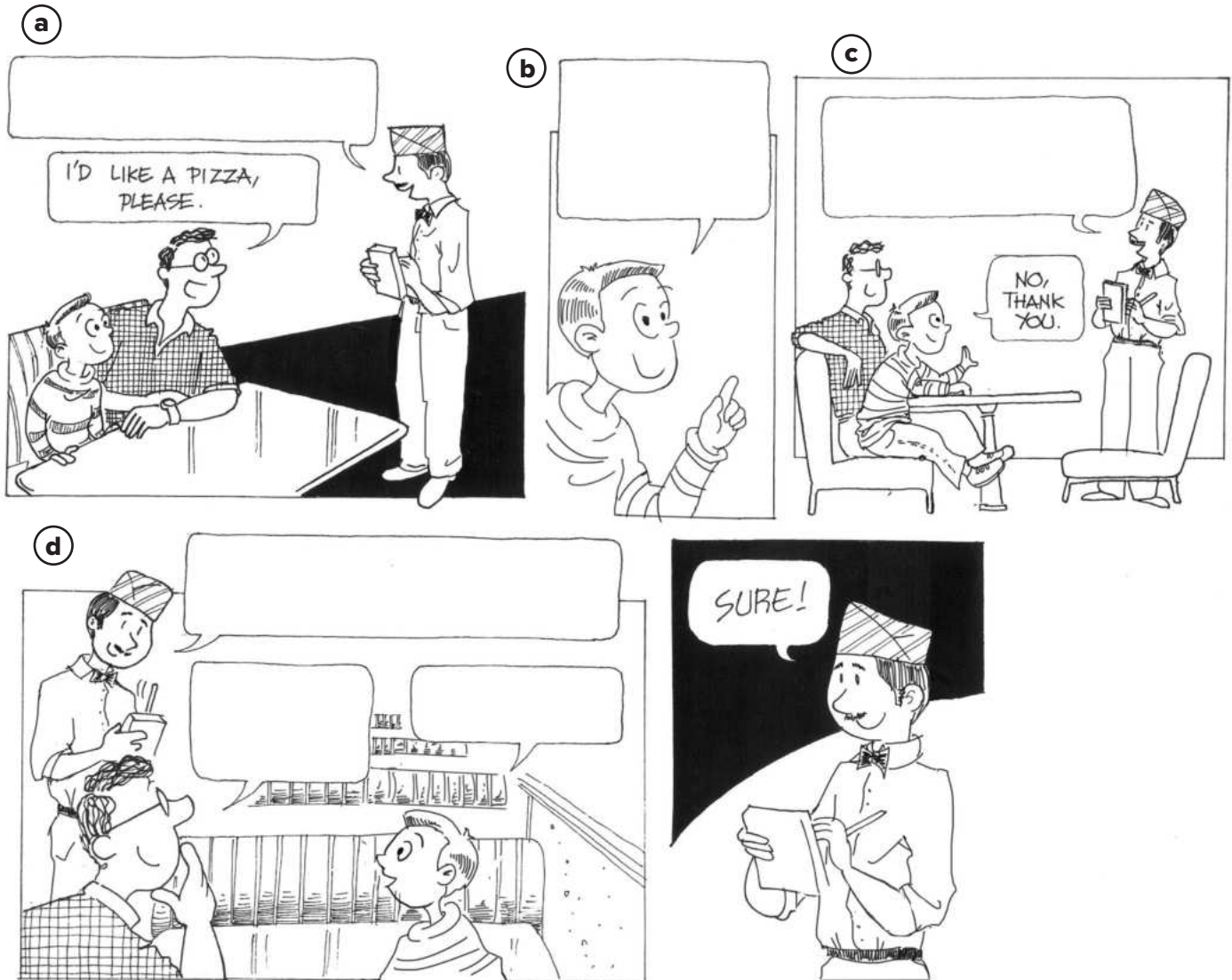
What would you like?

And I'd like a turkey sandwich.

I'd like some orange juice.

Would you like a beverage?

Would you like some fries with your sandwich?



# 5 Is There Any Ice Cream?

## E READING

Read the story.

Pizza is a popular food. It comes from Italy. The pizza capital of the world is Naples, Italy. The world's first pizza restaurant is still there. It goes back to 1830! The classic pizza of today goes back to the 1880s. Its creator was Raffaele Esposito. This pizza has the same colors as the Italian flag. The Italian flag is red, white, and green. Pizza has red tomatoes, white mozzarella cheese, and a green herb called basil.

There are many different kinds of pizza today. We can order chicken pizza, vegetable pizza, seafood pizza, pineapple pizza, potato pizza. Some pizzas are thick, and some pizzas are thin. Some pizzas have tomatoes, and some don't.

Most pizzas are round, but some aren't. There's just about any kind of pizza you want. People all over the world like to eat pizza. How about you? What kind of pizza do you eat?



Answer the questions.

1. Where is the world's first pizza restaurant? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What are the colors of the Italian flag? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. What part of the pizza is white? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. What kind of pizza do you like? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## F WRITING

Write about the food at a great restaurant in your town. What kind of restaurant is it? What kind of food is on the menu? What do you order at the restaurant?

*A Great Restaurant*

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

# EXPANSION Units 1 – 5

**A** Use the words to write an affirmative and a negative sentence about each photo.



**Ahmed / work / in an office**  
**Ahmed / work / in a restaurant**

*Ahmed works in an office.*

*Ahmed doesn't work in a restaurant.*



**1. Patrick / take / the bus to school**  
**Patrick / ride / his bike to school**



**2. they / eat / in a restaurant on Thursdays**  
**they / eat / at home on Thursdays**



**3. Jamal / play / basketball**  
**Jamal / play / volleyball**



**4. Matt and Alex / play / video games after school**  
**Matt and Alex / play / football after school**



**5. Hussein / exercise / at the gym**  
**Hussein / exercise / at home**





# EXPANSION Units 1 – 5

**B** Rewrite the sentences. Replace the frequency expressions with these adverbs of frequency: **never, seldom, sometimes, often, usually, and always.**

1. Khalid studies three times a week in the library.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Nawal doesn't walk to school every day.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. My friend cleans his room once a year.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Hanan practices English with her friends almost every day.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. I don't ever forget to study and do my homework.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. The children wake up at 7 o'clock in the morning every day.

\_\_\_\_\_

**C** Finish the conversation. Write questions. Use **who, what, where, and when.**

**Tim:** Hi, Jim. This is my friend Ali.

**Jim:** Nice to meet you, Ali.

**Ali:** Nice to meet you, too.

**Jim:** (1) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ali:** I'm from Saudi Arabia.

**Jim:** (2) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ali:** I live in Boston.

**Jim:** (3) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ali:** I live with my uncle and his family.

**Jim:** Do you go to college in Boston?

**Ali:** Yes, I do.

**Jim:** (4) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ali:** I want to be an engineer.

**Jim:** Wow, that's great!

**Tim:** Let's have lunch together.

**Jim:** Let's eat at Joe's Grill. They have great food.

**Tim:** Good idea! (5) \_\_\_\_\_

**Jim:** Let's eat at one o'clock.

**Tim:** OK.

# EXPANSION Units 1 – 5

**D** Write a question and an answer for each picture.



**cook**

**Q:** Is he cooking?

**A:** Yes, he is.



**1.** eat

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_



**2.** talk on the phone

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_



**3.** play basketball

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

**E** Complete the sentences with **too**, **enough**, **too many**, or **too much**.

1. I'm sorry, but I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ time to help you right now.
2. It's difficult to study when there's \_\_\_\_\_ noise outside.
3. The television is \_\_\_\_\_ loud. Please turn it down.
4. Do we have \_\_\_\_\_ eggs to make an omelet?
5. There are \_\_\_\_\_ people on the bus. Let's wait for the next one.
6. You shouldn't eat \_\_\_\_\_ sugar. It's not good for you.
7. The tea is still \_\_\_\_\_ hot to drink. Wait until it cools down.
8. I can't close my suitcase because there are \_\_\_\_\_ things in it.

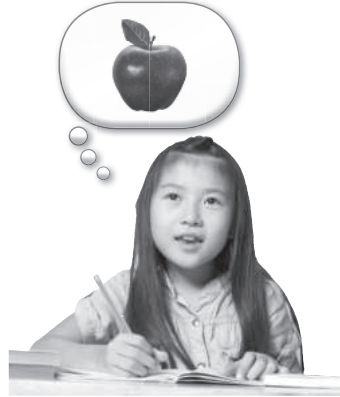


# EXPANSION Units 1 – 5

**F** Look at the photos. Write questions and answers with **would**. Use **a**, **an**, and **some**. Then write and draw what you would like.



**Michael**



**1 Mona**



**2 Nasser**

**?** *What would Michael like?*  
*He'd like some pasta.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

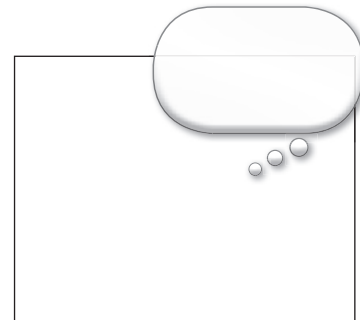
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_



**3 Robert**



**4 Dan**



**5 You**

3. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

5. (You) \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

# 6 What Was It Like?

Term 2

**A** Read the clues. Answer the question. Use the words in the box.

**museum   mall   stadium   ticket   exhibit   guide**

1. It's a place.

There are lots of people.

People can buy or eat things here.

What is it? \_\_\_\_\_

2. It's a place.

There are seats for people to sit in.

People come here to watch a football game.

What is it? \_\_\_\_\_

3. It's a place.

There are things to see here.

People can see historical things here and learn about the past.

What is it? \_\_\_\_\_

4. It's a thing.

It has lots of information in it.

It tells what's happening around town.

What is it? \_\_\_\_\_

5. It has a collection of things.

It has interesting things to look at.

People see and learn things.

What is it? \_\_\_\_\_

6. It's a thing.

It's paper.

People buy it to see an exhibit or event.

What is it? \_\_\_\_\_





# 6 What Was It Like?

**B** Imad wants to know about the football game Faisal went to last night. Write Imad's questions and Faisal's answers. Use information questions, the simple past tense of **be**, and the words in the box.

stadium    ~~football game~~    referee    fabulous    crowded    fair



**Imad:** *How was the football game?* \_\_\_\_\_

**Faisal:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Imad:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Faisal:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Imad:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Faisal:** \_\_\_\_\_

**C** Asma went to a food festival last weekend. Farah had to study and didn't go. Write a conversation between Asma and Farah. Use **yes/no** questions and short answers, the past tense of **be**, and the words in the parentheses.

**Asma:** The food festival was awesome! There were all kinds of ethnic food.

**Farah:** (Mexican cuisine / good) \_\_\_\_\_

**Asma:** Yes, \_\_\_\_\_

**Farah:** (Japanese cuisine / popular) \_\_\_\_\_

**Asma:** No, \_\_\_\_\_

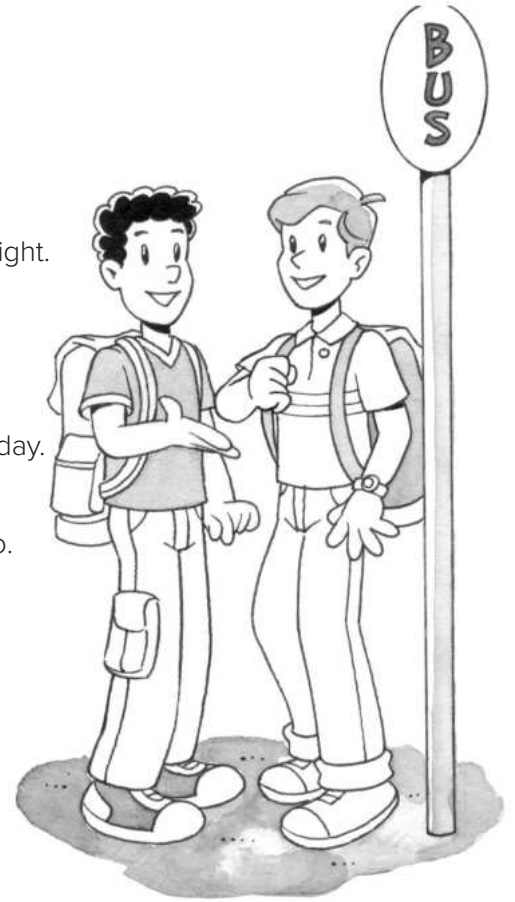
**Farah:** (desserts / delicious) \_\_\_\_\_

**Asma:** Yes, \_\_\_\_\_



**D** Complete the conversation. Use the simple past tense. The questions will help you write your answers.

**John:** What do you want to do this weekend?  
**Steve:** Do you want to go to the museum?  
**John:** No, I **(1)**\_\_\_\_\_ to the museum last weekend.  
**Steve:** Do you want to hang out at the mall?  
**John:** No, I **(2)**\_\_\_\_\_ at the mall last Thursday.  
**Steve:** Do you want to watch a football game?  
**John:** No, I **(3)**\_\_\_\_\_ a football game on Monday night.  
**Steve:** Do you want to invite Greg over and play video games?  
**John:** No, I **(4)**\_\_\_\_\_ Greg over last week.  
**Steve:** Do you want to take our bikes to the park?  
**John:** No, I **(5)**\_\_\_\_\_ my bike to the park last Saturday.  
**Steve:** Do you want to have a snack at Joe's Café?  
**John:** No, I **(6)**\_\_\_\_\_ a snack at Joe's two days ago.  
**Steve:** Do you want to play tennis in the park?  
**John:** No, I just **(7)**\_\_\_\_\_ tennis.  
**Steve:** Do you want to stay home?  
**John:** No, I **(8)**\_\_\_\_\_ home last night.  
**Steve:** Well, what do you want to do?  
**John:** I don't care. It's up to you.



**E** Write information questions for John's answers. Use the simple past tense.



1. *Where did he go last weekend?* \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_

## 6 What Was It Like?

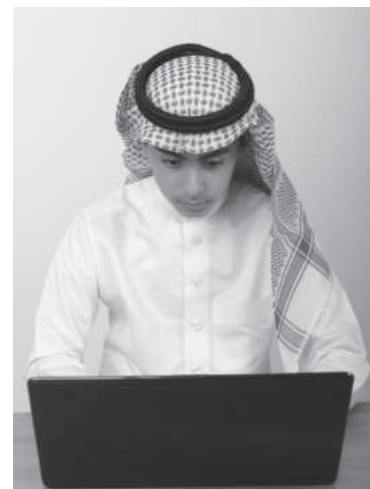
### F READING

Read the story.

I'm Ahmed from Riyadh. Last summer, my older brother and I went to Sudan. My brother works for a charity that gives healthful food and school supplies to children there. They do fantastic work, but not many people know about it.

His charity asked me to make a website for them so people could read about their work and help by giving money. I spent eight weeks in Sudan altogether. For the first two weeks, I traveled to different villages to learn about the charity. I was excited to help my brother and became proud of his work. Then, I went back to the capital city, Khartoum, and I designed and tested the new website. It was a success! Lots more people are giving money now to help the Sudanese children.

It was an amazing experience. I met a lot of new people and lived in a different culture. After I went back to Saudi Arabia, my parents said I could do the same work from home. So, I discovered two other charities and designed websites for them. I love the work. Now I know what I want to do after college.



#### Number the events in the correct order.

- \_\_\_\_\_ Ahmed traveled to villages in Sudan.
- \_\_\_\_\_ A charity asked Ahmed to design their website.
- \_\_\_\_\_ His parents said he could help other charities.
- \_\_\_\_\_ He designed websites for two other charities.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Ahmed went back to Saudi Arabia.
- \_\_\_\_\_ People started giving more money.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Ahmed made the new website.

### G WRITING

Write about an exhibit you saw at a museum or an event you went to. Where did you go? What did you see? Who did you go with? What did you do? What was it like?

*An Exhibit/Event I Went To*

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

# 7 What Happened?

**A** Complete the sentence for each photo. Use the words in the box.

happy

tired

angry

surprised

worried

scared



1. Alexander was \_\_\_\_\_ because his dad gave him a car for graduation.



2. Amanda's mother was \_\_\_\_\_ because Amanda didn't clean up her room.



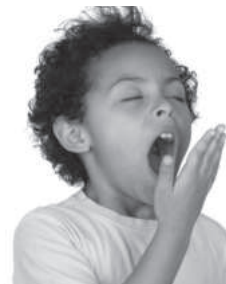
3. Faisal is \_\_\_\_\_ because he has a new car.



4. Alberto is \_\_\_\_\_ because he has a big test tomorrow.



5. Malcolm and Jimmy are \_\_\_\_\_ because they are riding a roller coaster.



6. Omar is always \_\_\_\_\_ because he stays up too late at night.



# 7 What Happened?

**B** Complete each sentence. Use **no one**, **nothing**, **someone**, or **anything**.

1. I didn't eat \_\_\_\_\_ for dinner because I had a very big lunch.
2. I went to see my grandparents the other night, but they were out shopping.  
\_\_\_\_\_ was home.
3. I forgot to go to the supermarket. There was \_\_\_\_\_ in the refrigerator.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ was at the bus stop this morning, so I wasn't there alone.

**C** Match the question to the answer.

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. _____ Why were the boys upset? | a. Because someone broke his car window.  |
| 2. _____ Why is Khalid angry?     | b. Because I can't sleep.                 |
| 3. _____ Why is Asma sad?         | c. Because I won the competition.         |
| 4. _____ Why was Badr surprised?  | d. Because they lost the football match.  |
| 5. _____ Why are you tired?       | e. Because he passed his math test.       |
| 6. _____ Why are you happy?       | f. Because she lost her favorite sweater. |

**D** Answer the questions. Use the past tense and the adverb **ago**.



**When were you angry?**

*I was angry two days ago.*

**Why were you angry?**

*I was angry because I broke my laptop.*

1. When were you surprised?

\_\_\_\_\_

Why were you surprised?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. When were you nervous?

\_\_\_\_\_

Why were you nervous?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. When were you tired?

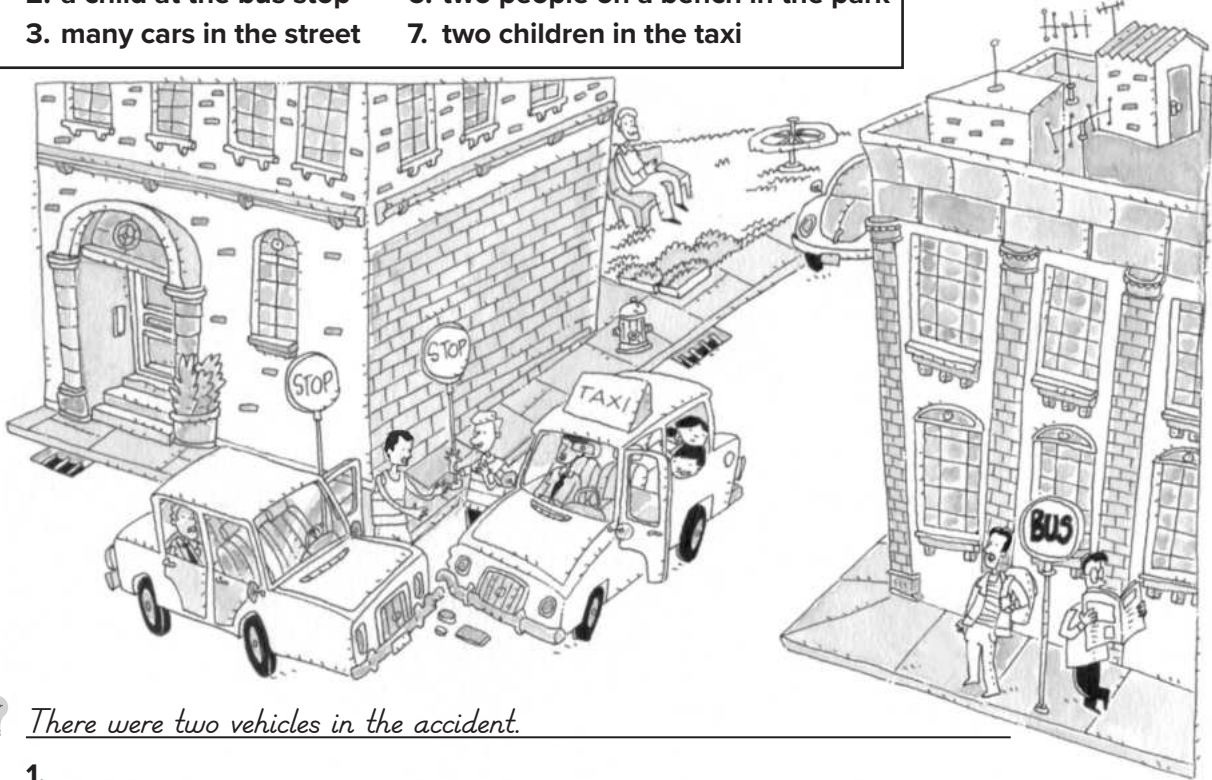
\_\_\_\_\_

Why were you tired?

\_\_\_\_\_

**E** You are a witness at this accident scene. Describe the scene. Use the information in the box. Use **there was/wasn't** or **there were/weren't**.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>💡 <b>two vehicles</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. stop signs at the corner</li> <li>2. a child at the bus stop</li> <li>3. many cars in the street</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. a man in the back seat of the car</li> <li>5. two people at the bus stop</li> <li>6. two people on a bench in the park</li> <li>7. two children in the taxi</li> </ol> |
|--|--|



💡 *There were two vehicles in the accident.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_

**F** Use the picture above. Write a police report.

---



---



---



---



---

# 7 What Happened?

## G READING

Complete the story. Use the simple past tense.

Faris (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a really bad day two weeks ago. He (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (not get) enough sleep because he (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (study) until midnight. The next morning he (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very tired. He (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) breakfast and (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) to the bus stop. On the way, Faris (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (see) an accident. The driver of a blue car (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) on his cell phone. He (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (hit) a red car because he (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (not stop) at the stop sign. It (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) terrible, and Faris (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) surprised because no one (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) hurt. The police (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive). The officer (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (ask) Faris, (16) "\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (see) anything?" Faris (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (have) to fill out a witness report about the accident. Faris finally (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) at the bus stop, but it (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) too late. He (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (miss) his bus so he (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) to school. He (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) happy because he (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) really tired. This (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) a good way to start the day!

H Now answer the questions about Faris's day.

1. When did Faris have a really bad day?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Why didn't Faris get enough sleep?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Why did the blue car's driver hit the red car?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Why was Faris surprised?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Why was Faris not happy and really tired when he arrived at school?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## I WRITING

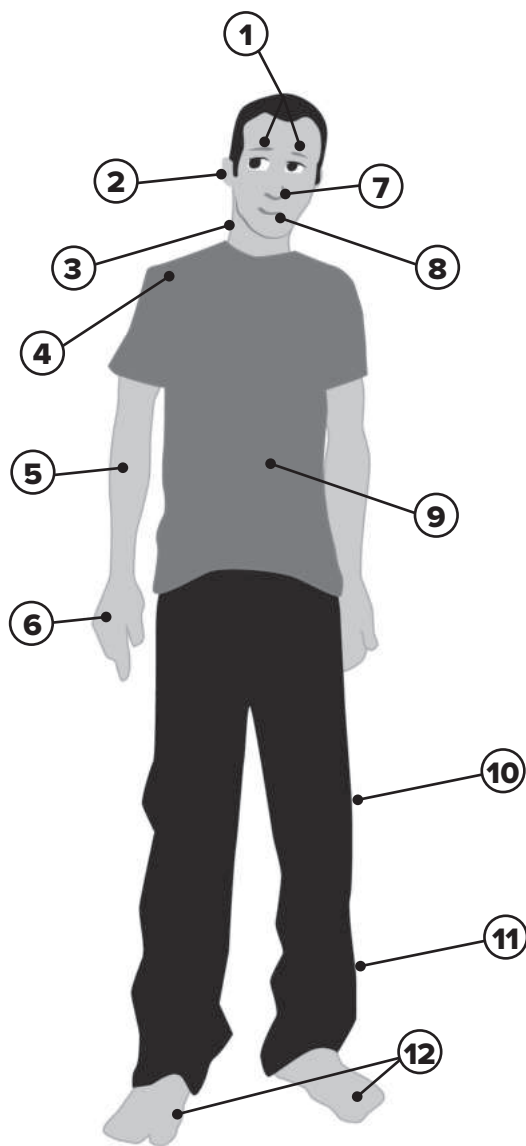
Write about a really good day or a really bad day that you had. When was it? Why was it so good or so bad? What happened?

*My Really \_\_\_\_\_ Day*

@saudienglish

# 8 What's Wrong?

**A** Write the names of the body parts.



- |          |          |           |
|----------|----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 5. _____ | 9. _____  |
| 2. _____ | 6. _____ | 10. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 7. _____ | 11. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 8. _____ | 12. _____ |



# 8 What's Wrong?

**B** Look at the photos. Complete the conversations.

**Yahya:** My tooth hurts. I have a toothache.  
**Omar:** Where do you go when you have a toothache?  
**Yahya:** When I have a toothache, I go to the dentist.



**1. Sam:** I'm sneezing and I have watery eyes! I have a \_\_\_\_\_.  
**John:** What do you do when \_\_\_\_\_?  
**Sam:** \_\_\_\_\_



**2. Majid:** My throat hurts. I have a \_\_\_\_\_.  
**Adel:** What do you do when \_\_\_\_\_?  
**Majid:** \_\_\_\_\_



**3. Adnan:** My head hurts. I have a \_\_\_\_\_.  
**Fahad:** What do you do when \_\_\_\_\_?  
**Adnan:** \_\_\_\_\_



**4. Jeff:** I have a \_\_\_\_\_.  
**Robert:** How do you feel when \_\_\_\_\_?  
**Jeff:** \_\_\_\_\_



**5. Scott:** I think I have the \_\_\_\_\_.  
**Andy:** How do you feel when \_\_\_\_\_?  
**Scott:** \_\_\_\_\_



**C** Complete the sentences. Use **should/shouldn't**.



1. I have an earache. I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the doctor.
2. Amal is sneezing a lot and has a runny nose. She \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) at school today.
3. Badria is always tired and very sleepy. She \_\_\_\_\_ (take) vitamins every day.
4. Hameed has the flu and a fever. He \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) in bed.
5. Look at your little brother. He's coughing on the food. He \_\_\_\_\_ (not do) that.  
He \_\_\_\_\_ (cover) his mouth with his hand when he coughs.

**D** Read the sentences. Answer the questions with your advice.



**I have a sore throat, and my friend wants to talk to me on the phone. What should I do?**

*You shouldn't talk to your friend on the phone now.*

1. My sister has a toothache. Her tooth hurts a lot, and she can't sleep. What should she do?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Fahd has a stomachache, and he has to meet his friends at a restaurant. What should he do?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. I didn't study for tomorrow's history test. It's late now, and I feel sleepy. What should I do?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Fadwa doesn't have a stomachache anymore, and now she feels very hungry and thirsty.  
What should she do?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Ali and his brother have the flu, but their football match is this afternoon. What should they do?  
\_\_\_\_\_



# 8 What's Wrong?

## E READING

Read the story.

Ryan and Tim weren't excited about the camping trip. Their father said, "Pack extra clothes. It's cold



near the lake." The boys packed their own things. They packed a TV and an electric grill.

The first night at camp, the boys wanted to cook sausages on the grill. "You can't," said their father. "We don't have any electricity!" So they cooked the sausages over a fire. After dinner, the boys wanted to watch TV. Their father said, "Remember there's no electricity. You can't use the TV." The boys were bored, and they went to bed early.

The boys got up early in the morning. They were excited as they went for a walk to explore the lake. When the boys left, their father went back to sleep. He was happy.

When they got back to camp, their father asked, "What happened?" Tim said, "We fell in the lake."

Their father said, "Put on your dry clothes." But Ryan and Tim didn't pack any extra clothes. So they went home early.

When they got home, Ryan and Tim felt sick. They sneezed and they coughed. But they were glad to be home. They watched TV and they cooked sausages on the electric grill.

Answer the questions.

1. What did Ryan and Tim take on their camping trip? What didn't they take?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Why didn't they watch TV? \_\_\_\_\_

3. What do you think happened at the lake?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. How did the boys feel when they got home?

\_\_\_\_\_

## F WRITING

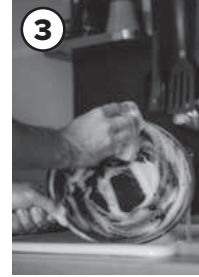
Write about the last time you were sick. Where were you? How did you feel? What did you do? What advice do you have for a person who gets sick?

*When I Was Sick*

Handwriting practice area with horizontal lines for writing.

# 9 Let's Go Out

**A** Look at the photos. Complete the sentences.



**Maha** goes shopping on Thursday afternoon.

1. Jimmy \_\_\_\_\_ every day after school.
2. Robert \_\_\_\_\_ on Saturday morning.
3. Badria \_\_\_\_\_ after dinner.
4. Sam \_\_\_\_\_ on Thursday morning.
5. Dan and his friends \_\_\_\_\_ every weekend.
6. Omar \_\_\_\_\_ every day in the summer.
7. Amina \_\_\_\_\_ on Saturday morning.

**B** Write the activities from exercise **A** in the correct column.

**Free-Time Activities**

**Chores**

go shopping  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_



# 9 Let's Go Out

**C** Look at the photos. Complete the conversations. Use **Let's** and **should**.



**A:** What should we drink?

**B:** Let's have some soda.

**A:** We should drink some juice.

**1. A:** What should we eat?

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_



**2. A:** How should we go to the mall?

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

**3. A:** Where should we go on vacation?

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

**D** Complete the sentences. Use **go** + verb + **-ing**.

**1.** Ismail and his friends \_\_\_\_\_ (hike) every year for vacation.

**2.** Steve \_\_\_\_\_ (surf) two or three times a week.

**3.** Tariq and his brother \_\_\_\_\_ (bowl) at the mall on the weekend.

**4.** Ali \_\_\_\_\_ (swim) at the pool in his neighborhood.

**5.** My parents \_\_\_\_\_ (shop) at the new supermarket.

**6.** My brother \_\_\_\_\_ (horseback ride) on the weekend.

**7.** Mark \_\_\_\_\_ (ski) in Aspen in December.

**E** Complete the conversation. Use **Why don't** and **have to**.

**Fahd:** (1) \_\_\_\_\_ play tennis tomorrow night?

**Imad:** (2) \_\_\_\_\_ stay home tomorrow night.

**Fahd:** Why?

**Imad:** (3) \_\_\_\_\_ clean my room.

**Fahd:** (4) \_\_\_\_\_ clean it tonight?

**Imad:** I guess I can, but (5) \_\_\_\_\_  
mow the lawn tomorrow night, too.

**Fahd:** (6) \_\_\_\_\_ mow the lawn right  
after school, before we play tennis?

**Imad:** OK, but (7) \_\_\_\_\_ watch my brother  
tomorrow, too. So (8) \_\_\_\_\_ play  
tennis tonight?

**Fahd:** (9) \_\_\_\_\_ go to football practice.  
Then (10) \_\_\_\_\_ do my homework  
and study for a math test.

**Imad:** Then (11) \_\_\_\_\_ play tennis  
this weekend?

**Fahd:** That's a good idea! Let's do that.



**F** Make a list of activities Imad has to do. Make a list of activities Fahd has to do.

**Imad's Activities**

**Fahd's Activities**



*He has to clean his room.*

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

# 9 Let's Go Out

**G** Do you like to clean your room? List reasons why you can't clean your room.



**I** *I have to go to school.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_

## **H** WRITING

Write about your morning before school. What do you have to do?

*I have to...*

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

# 10 It's a Bargain!

**A** Look at the photos and read the clues. Choose the right object.



1. We can wear these when it's sunny. \_\_\_\_\_
2. She can wear one on her finger. \_\_\_\_\_
3. She can wear these in her ears. \_\_\_\_\_
4. She can wear one on her neck. \_\_\_\_\_
5. He can wear this to the office. \_\_\_\_\_
6. He can wear one with his pants. \_\_\_\_\_
7. He can wear one to the gym. \_\_\_\_\_
8. You can wear one around your neck when it's cold. \_\_\_\_\_
9. You can use one when it rains. \_\_\_\_\_
10. She can keep her wallet in it. \_\_\_\_\_





# 10 It's a Bargain!

**B** Look at the photos. Complete the conversations.



**A:** Are those his sunglasses?

**B:** Yes, they're his. They belong to John.

**A:** OK. So they're not yours.

**B:** No. But I do have sunglasses that are similar.



1. **A:** Is that \_\_\_\_\_ new purse?

**B:** Yes, it's \_\_\_\_\_.

**A:** Farah's purse is black, too.

**B:** I know. I saw it. I really like \_\_\_\_\_, too.



2. **A:** Look at \_\_\_\_\_ new ring! It belonged to my grandmother.

**B:** So it was \_\_\_\_\_, and it's \_\_\_\_\_ now.

**A:** That's right. It's \_\_\_\_\_ now.

**B:** Well, \_\_\_\_\_ new ring is beautiful.



3. **A:** Eric, that can't be \_\_\_\_\_ tie. You don't have any ties!

**B:** Yes, I do! This is \_\_\_\_\_ tie.

**A:** Really? You can tell me. \_\_\_\_\_ tie is it?

**B:** It's \_\_\_\_\_! It belongs to me!



4. **A:** Look at this photo of me. I'm two years old.

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_ cowboy hat is that? Is it \_\_\_\_\_?

**A:** No, it's not \_\_\_\_\_. It's my brother's!

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_ hat looks great on you!



5. **A:** Wow! Look at Leo. He's wearing a new suit.

**B:** It's not \_\_\_\_\_.

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_ suit is it, then?

**B:** It's \_\_\_\_\_.

**A:** So it's \_\_\_\_\_ suit.

**B:** Yes. \_\_\_\_\_ suit doesn't fit anymore, and he is going to his friend's graduation this evening!



**C** Read the story. Then complete the sentences. Use **one**, **ones**, and **too**.

Last week, Andy and Kevin went to the mall to find some bargains. They bought a lot of things. Kevin found some black hiking pants for \$10.00. Andy bought some brown hiking pants. His were more expensive. He paid \$15.00. Andy said, "Kevin, those pants are too small. Why are you buying them?" Kevin said, "These black hiking pants are a bargain." Andy bought a pair of sunglasses for \$50.00. Kevin found a pair too, but he didn't buy them. He said, "These sunglasses are cool, but they're \$25.00. That's just too expensive."



Then they both bought leather coats. Andy bought a black leather coat. He said, "Look at this coat! It's on sale for \$25.00."

Kevin said, "Wow! That's really cheap. And look at this brown one. It's only \$15.00." Kevin bought the brown leather coat. It was too big, but he still liked it because it was a bargain. "Let's use the money we saved to go out to dinner," said Kevin. "That's a great idea, but I don't want to spend all my money," answered Andy.

- Kevin and Andy bought hiking pants. Kevin bought the black \_\_\_\_\_.  
Andy bought the brown \_\_\_\_\_.
- Kevin paid \$10.00 for his pants, but they were \_\_\_\_\_ small for him.
- Andy bought a pair of sunglasses. Kevin didn't buy any sunglasses because they were \_\_\_\_\_ expensive.
- Andy and Kevin bought leather coats. Andy bought the black \_\_\_\_\_.  
Kevin bought the brown \_\_\_\_\_, and it was \_\_\_\_\_ big for him.



## D READING

Read the story.

Do you have an umbrella? Someone invented the umbrella about 4,000 years ago. People used umbrellas in Egypt, Assyria, Greece, and China in ancient times. Nowadays, we use our umbrellas for protection from the rain. However, people first used umbrellas for protection from the sun. People in China were the first ones to use their umbrellas for rain. They put wax on paper umbrellas.

European women used umbrellas before European men used them. Jonas Hanway was the first man to carry one in England. He made umbrellas popular for men and women. Some people called the umbrella a Hanway because of him.

We make umbrellas from many different things. The first ones were made of wood and cloth. Now many are made of plastic or other synthetic materials. Today umbrellas are easy to carry. They fold up into a small package. The umbrella is a great invention. Don't forget yours the next time it rains.



Answer the questions.

1. What were the first umbrellas used for?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Who first used umbrellas for protection from the rain?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Who was the first man to use an umbrella in Europe?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. What were the first umbrellas made of?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. What are many umbrellas made of today?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## E WRITING

Where do you go shopping?  
What is your favorite store?  
What kind of store is it?  
What do they sell?  
What do you buy there?

*My Favorite Store*

@saudienglish

# 11 There's No Comparison

**A** Read the sentences. List all the adjectives used to compare.

1. The black car is a luxury car, and the white car is a compact car. The luxury car is larger. It has four doors. The compact car is smaller and has only two doors. The luxury car is also more expensive, and it costs more to drive.
- 



2. Mount Everest is the world's tallest mountain. It is 8,848 meters tall. You can see it from several countries. Mount McKinley is the tallest mountain in the U.S. It is 6,194 meters tall and is in the state of Alaska. Mount Everest is taller than Mount McKinley, and it is one of the most dangerous mountains to climb.
- 



3. What is the most popular sport in the U.S.? That is a good question. Some people say American football is more popular. Others say baseball is more popular. The sport of baseball is older, but that doesn't mean it is more popular. Both American football and baseball have big crowds at their games, but many football games have a larger number of fans watching on TV.
- 



4. The Great Wall of China is the longest wall in the world. It is over 6,700 kilometers long. It was important to the history of China. It's amazing! The Great Wall is longer than the longest river in the world—the Nile River. The Nile River is 6,650 kilometers long. The Nile starts in Burundi and ends in Egypt on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. The Nile is the most important source of water in Egypt. Both the Great Wall of China and the Nile River are famous.
- 





# 11 There's No Comparison

**B** Complete the chart. Fill in the adjective, the comparative adjective, or the superlative adjective.

Adjective	Comparative Adjective	Superlative Adjective
		the smartest
	more intelligent	
difficult		
easy		
		the longest
	shorter	
big		
		the smallest
dangerous		
pretty		
popular		
		the best
	worse	
		the most interesting

**C** Answer these questions.

1. Who is the tallest person in your family?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Who is the youngest person in your family?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. How many people in your family are younger than you?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. What is the easiest subject in school for you?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. What is the most difficult subject for you?

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Is English easier for you than your other subjects?

\_\_\_\_\_

**D** Complete the story. Use comparative adjectives or superlative adjectives.

### What a Snowman!

A group of seventh graders at Telstar Middle School in Bethel, Maine, did something very unusual. They built one of the world's **(1)**\_\_\_\_\_ (tall) snowman. They made their snowman in February, 1999, and they named him Angas after the governor of the state of Maine.

Angas was 113 feet and 7 inches tall (35 meters). He was the **(2)**\_\_\_\_\_ (big) snowman ever. The students used 200,000 cubic feet (5,660 cubic meters) of snow for Angas. His arms were 10 feet (3 meters) long. His hat was twenty feet (6 meters) high. One student said, "I think that this is the **(3)**\_\_\_\_\_ (large) hat in the world! It's big enough for forty or fifty people!" Can you imagine a 120-foot-long (37-meter-long) scarf? Angas's scarf was **(4)**\_\_\_\_\_ (long) than a school bus! One student said, "This was the **(5)**\_\_\_\_\_ (good) and the **(6)**\_\_\_\_\_ (exciting) school project ever!"

The students held the record for many years. Since then, two more snowmen **(7)**\_\_\_\_\_ (tall) than Angas have been built. In 2008, Olympia, a snow-woman from Bethel, Maine measured 122 feet and 1 inch (37.21 meters) tall. Then in 2020, a snowman in Austria named Riesi smashed Olympia's record measuring nearly 125 feet (38.04 meters) tall.



**E** Read the story in exercise **D** again. Answer **yes** or **no**.

- \_\_\_\_\_ Angas was the name of a governor of Maine and of a snowman.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Children in New York made the biggest snowman in 1999.
- \_\_\_\_\_ The snowman had a hat and a scarf.
- \_\_\_\_\_ The snowman was part of a school project.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Children in Mexico built a snowman bigger than Angas.

**F** Complete the sentences with comparative and superlative forms. Use the adjectives in parentheses.

- (expensive) The \_\_\_\_\_ camera cost \$60,000. It is an old camera from 1901. That's a lot \_\_\_\_\_ than today's disposable digital cameras. These cost only \$10 to \$15.
- (successful) One of the \_\_\_\_\_ novels of all time is *A Tale of Two Cities* by Charles Dickens. It sold over 200 million copies. It is even \_\_\_\_\_ than Tolkien's *The Hobbit*.
- (rich) Many of the \_\_\_\_\_ people made their money in the computer industry. Bill Gates of Microsoft is \_\_\_\_\_ than any king or queen in the world.
- (big) The \_\_\_\_\_ burger was 6,000 pounds (2.74 tonnes). People in the state of Montana made it. That's \_\_\_\_\_ than some elephants.

# 11 There's No Comparison

## G READING

Read the email.

The screenshot shows an email client interface. At the top, there are buttons for Reply, Reply to all, Forward, Delete, Print, and a scroll bar. Below these buttons, the email header shows 'To: saeed@supergoal.com' and 'Subject: vacation'. The main body of the email contains the following text:

Hi Saeed,

Thanks for your email. How amazing! A summer vacation to Malaysia and a trip to the rainforest! It's one of the most spectacular places in the world! My brother also says that Malaysia has some of the most beautiful beaches.

We have vacation plans, too. I'm going skiing with my family in June! The most surprising thing is that we only have to go to Dubai. The indoor ski resort is open all year. It's the largest indoor snow park in the world, and the mall has some of the best shopping and entertainment.

I have an idea. Maybe we can spend a weekend together in October. We wanted to go to the desert last year, but we didn't get there. It's just a short bus ride from your home and from my home. Why don't we go camping there? It's more relaxing than climbing a mountain or skiing. And it's still a fun adventure! And the weather is cooler in the fall. Call me when you get back.

Best regards,  
Rashid

Answer **yes** or **no**.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Rashid is taking a vacation to Malaysia.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Rashid's brother recommends the beaches in Malaysia.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Rashid is going on a ski vacation in the summer.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The ski resort is in a shopping mall.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Rashid wants to go to the desert with Saeed in the summer.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The desert is not far from Rashid's home.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Rashid thinks that camping in the desert is an adventurous activity.

## H WRITING

Write about your last vacation. Where did you go? What did you do? Compare it to another vacation you took.

*My Vacation*

@saudienglish

# EXPANSION Units 6 – 11

**A** Complete the conversation with **was, wasn't, were, or weren't**.

- Sabah:** How **(1)** \_\_\_\_\_ your field trip to the archaeological museum?  
**Fatima:** I enjoyed it very much. There **(2)** \_\_\_\_\_ so many interesting things to see.  
**Sabah:** Like what? **(3)** \_\_\_\_\_ there any dinosaur bones?  
**Fatima:** No, there **(4)** \_\_\_\_\_ anything like that. But there **(5)** \_\_\_\_\_ exhibits about ancient cities. My favorite exhibit showed how people lived in the past without the technology that we have today.  
**Sabah:** Wow! That does sound interesting.  
**Fatima:** How about you? How **(6)** \_\_\_\_\_ your afternoon at the mall?  
**Sabah:** It **(7)** \_\_\_\_\_ very tiring.  
**Fatima:** Did you find a dress for graduation?  
**Sabah:** Well, I tried on a dress that I really liked, but it **(8)** \_\_\_\_\_ too big. The store didn't have one in a smaller size. And the shoes that I liked **(9)** \_\_\_\_\_ the right size either. They **(10)** \_\_\_\_\_ too small.  
**Fatima:** Oh, no! What about graduation?  
**Sabah:** My sister said that I can borrow one of her dresses, but I still have to find a pair of shoes.  
**Fatima:** Why don't we go shopping together this weekend? I can help you find some shoes.  
**Sabah:** Thanks. That's a great idea!

**B** Complete the conversation. Use **someone, no one, nothing, and anything**.

- Ali:** Did you see what happened?  
**Joe:** Yes, I did. There was **(1)** \_\_\_\_\_ at the bus stop.  
**Ali:** Who?  
**Joe:** I don't know. It was a man in a suit, and he was alone. **(2)** \_\_\_\_\_ was with him at the bus stop.  
**Ali:** What happened next?  
**Joe:** The man ran down the sidewalk. Then suddenly a car crashed into the bus stop.  
**Ali:** Wow! How was the car?  
**Joe:** It was fine. **(3)** \_\_\_\_\_ was wrong with it.  
**Ali:** Incredible! And the man at the bus stop? And the driver? How were they?  
**Joe:** They were fine, too.  
**Ali:** No broken bones?  
**Joe:** No. They didn't break **(4)** \_\_\_\_\_.





# EXPANSION Units 6 – 11

**C** Write new sentences. Use past tense verbs. Use the words in parentheses.



**She watches television every day.**

**(last weekend)** *She watched television last weekend.*

1. He rides his bike to school every day.

(yesterday) \_\_\_\_\_

2. She is studying French this year.

(last year) \_\_\_\_\_

3. My mother makes cookies every weekend.

(last weekend) \_\_\_\_\_

4. She gets up early every morning.

(yesterday) \_\_\_\_\_

5. They take the bus to school this year.

(last year) \_\_\_\_\_

**D** Answer the questions.



**Amina has the flu. How does she feel?**

*She feels sick.*

1. Hussain is winning his football match. How does he feel?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Mona and Sahar didn't get much sleep. How do they feel?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Walid lost his cell phone. How does he feel?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. There was an earthquake. How does Maha feel?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Saeed didn't eat breakfast or lunch. How does he feel?

\_\_\_\_\_

# EXPANSION Units 6 – 11

**E** Complete the conversation. Use **my, mine, your, yours,** and **ours**.

- Mom:** Whose is this? Is it **(1)** \_\_\_\_\_, Sahar?
- Sahar:** It's not **(2)** \_\_\_\_\_. I don't have a vest. I have a coat.
- Mom:** Is this yours, Amal?
- Amal:** No, it's not **(3)** \_\_\_\_\_ vest.  
**(4)** \_\_\_\_\_ is smaller.
- Mom:** Look, Fahd. Is this **(5)** \_\_\_\_\_?
- Fahd:** No, it's not **(6)** \_\_\_\_\_.
- Amal:** Isn't **(7)** \_\_\_\_\_ vest red, Fahd?
- Fahd:** Yes, it is.
- Amal, Fahd,  
and Sahar:** It's not **(8)** \_\_\_\_\_.
- Fahd:** Wait, Mom. That is **(9)** \_\_\_\_\_ vest.
- Mom:** Yes, you're right. It is my vest. Sorry!



**F** Read each question. Complete each sentence. Use **his, her,** and **hers**.

1. Was it Sahar's vest? No, it wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ vest.
2. Was it Fahd's vest? No, it wasn't \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Was it Mom's vest? Yes, it was \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Was it Amal's vest? No, it wasn't \_\_\_\_\_.

**G** Read the story. Answer the questions. Use **have to**.

It's Friday night. Ali and his sister Mona have to go to school tomorrow, and they still have to do some things before they go to sleep. They didn't do their homework. Ali forgot to clean his room. Mona didn't wash the dishes after dinner. Ali didn't make his lunch. Mona forgot to put her books in her backpack. They're very tired.

1. What do Ali and Mona both have to do tomorrow?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. What do Ali and Mona both have to do tonight?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. What does Mona have to do?

\_\_\_\_\_

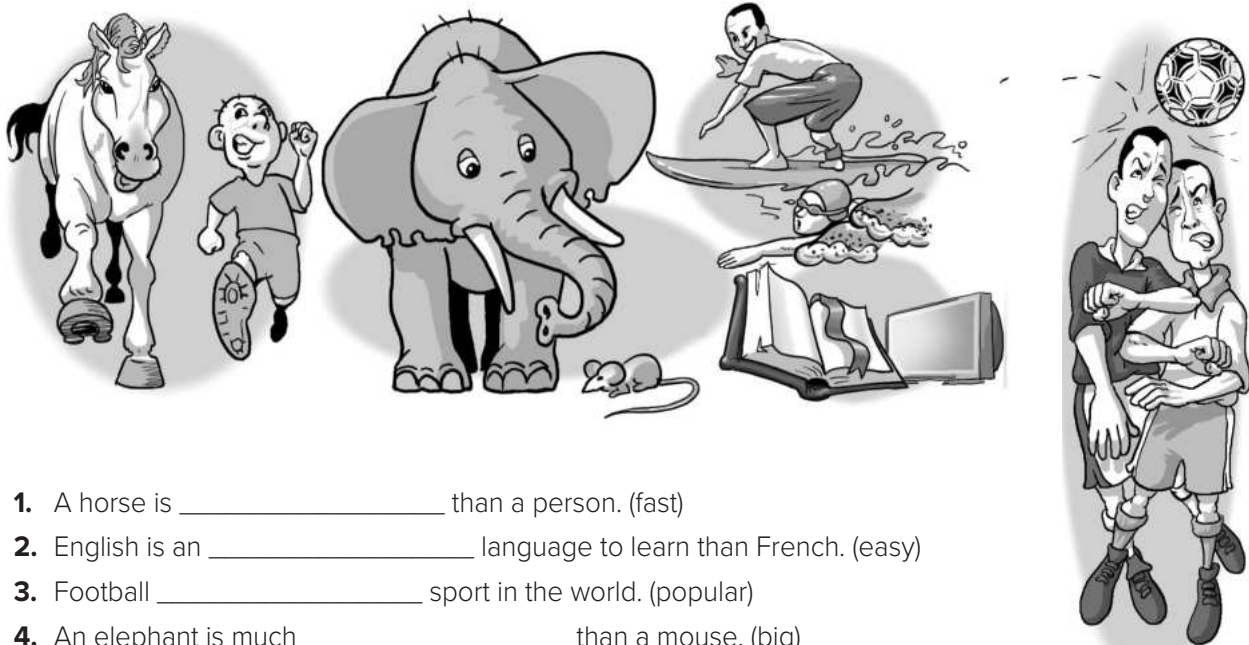
4. What does Ali have to do?

\_\_\_\_\_



# EXPANSION Units 6 – 11

**H** Complete the sentences. Use comparative or superlative forms of the adjectives in parentheses.



1. A horse is \_\_\_\_\_ than a person. (fast)
2. English is an \_\_\_\_\_ language to learn than French. (easy)
3. Football \_\_\_\_\_ sport in the world. (popular)
4. An elephant is much \_\_\_\_\_ than a mouse. (big)
5. Elephants are \_\_\_\_\_ land animals on Earth. (heavy)
6. I think that surfing is \_\_\_\_\_ than swimming. (dangerous)
7. Badr thinks Sam's Pizzeria makes \_\_\_\_\_ pizza in town. (good)
8. Ali disagrees. He thinks Luigi's Pizzeria makes \_\_\_\_\_ pizza than Sam's. (good)
9. Badr and Ali agree that the service at Sam's Pizzeria is \_\_\_\_\_ than Luigi's. (bad)
10. I think that books are \_\_\_\_\_ than TV shows. (interesting)

**I** Answer the questions.

1. Which is the best restaurant in your town? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What is the most difficult subject in school for you? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Which is the oldest building in your town? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. What are the three biggest cities in your country? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Which sports or hobbies are most popular with you and your friends? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

# 12 It's Going to Be Fun!

Term 3

**A** Look at the photos. Describe each photo with an adjective. Use the adjectives in the box.

exotic    inexpensive    luxurious    **relaxing**    adventurous    noisy



💡 *relaxing* \_\_\_\_\_

1. \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_



3. \_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. \_\_\_\_\_

**B** Write a sentence about each photo in exercise **A**. Use the correct adjective.

💡 *An afternoon at the park is relaxing.* OR *The man is having a relaxing day at the park.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. \_\_\_\_\_





# 12 It's Going to Be Fun!

**C** Look at the schedule. Write sentences. Use the future with **going to**.

Malaysian Sun Tours: Imad and Faisal's Schedule						
Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday
Imad and Faisal: fly to Malaysia	Imad: climb a mountain Faisal: go fishing	Imad and Faisal: go to the beach	Imad and Faisal: go sailing	Imad: visit museums Faisal: go diving	Imad and Faisal: go on a jungle trek	Imad and Faisal: fly home

**Monday / Imad / visit the museums**

*On Monday, Imad isn't going to visit the museums.*

1. Tuesday / Imad and Faisal / go to the beach

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Thursday / Faisal / go diving

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Saturday / Imad / go sailing

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Friday / Imad and Faisal / go on a jungle trek

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Monday / Imad and Faisal / visit the museums

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Thursday / Faisal / go fishing

\_\_\_\_\_

7. Monday / Imad / climb a mountain

\_\_\_\_\_

**D** You are going to Malaysia on vacation. Write what you are going to take and not going to take. Use the words in the box or use your own ideas.

passport	boots	sandals	umbrella	coat	sunglasses
----------	-------	---------	----------	------	------------

**Going To Take**

**Not Going To Take**

*I'm going to take sandals.*

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**E** Complete the conversation. Use **What, When, Which, How, Where, Who,** and **How long.**

**Mr. Tyler:** (1) \_\_\_\_\_'s your name?  
**Adnan:** My name is Adnan Abdullah.  
**Mr. Tyler:** (2) \_\_\_\_\_ are you going?  
**Adnan:** I'm going to Orlando, Florida.  
**Mr. Tyler:** (3) \_\_\_\_\_ are you going to stay with?  
**Adnan:** I'm going to stay with my uncle.  
**Mr. Tyler:** (4) \_\_\_\_\_ are you going to get to your uncle's house?  
**Adnan:** I'm going to take a taxi.  
**Mr. Tyler:** (5) \_\_\_\_\_ are you going to stay in Florida?  
**Adnan:** I'm going to stay for about a week.  
**Mr. Tyler:** (6) \_\_\_\_\_ are you going to do in Orlando?  
**Adnan:** I'm going to visit Disney World.  
**Mr. Tyler:** (7) \_\_\_\_\_ airport are you going to fly out of?  
**Adnan:** I'm going to fly out of Orlando Airport to go to New York.  
**Mr. Tyler:** (8) \_\_\_\_\_ are you going to leave the United States?  
**Adnan:** I'm going to leave next month.  
**Mr. Tyler:** Welcome to the United States. Have a nice vacation.  
**Adnan:** Thank you.



**F** Answer the questions.

1. Who is Adnan going to stay with in Florida?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What is Adnan going to do on his vacation?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Where is Adnan going to fly to after his stay in Orlando?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. When is Adnan going to leave the United States?  
\_\_\_\_\_



# 12 It's Going to Be Fun!

## G READING

Read the email.

To: rashid@supergoal.com  
Subject: re: vacation

Hi Rashid,

How are you? You're going to have a lot of fun skiing in June. And I love your idea! Let's definitely spend the weekend together in the fall. It's going to be perfect after my vacation to Malaysia and yours to Dubai.

I have more information about my trip. First, we're going on a river safari to see wildlife like monkeys, orangutans, and elephants. Our next adventure is climbing Mount Kinabalu. We're going to hike for five hours and stay overnight at a rest house. Early the next morning, we're going to climb all the way to the top. It's going to be a wonderful view at sunrise. I'm a little afraid, but we're going to have an experienced guide for the climb. Finally, we're going to relax at the beach for a few days.

I'm going to pack warm clothes for our climb—sweatpants, a sweater, and a good pair of hiking boots. Are you going to pack warm clothes, too? Of course, I'm also going to take some shorts and T-shirts.

You and I are going to have great summer vacations! And we're going to have a great fall vacation, too!

All my best,  
Saeed

Answer the questions.

1. Who is going to go skiing in the summer? Where?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What is Saeed going to do on his vacation?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. How long is Saeed going to climb before he reaches the rest house?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. What is Saeed going to pack?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## H WRITING

Imagine you are going to take a vacation. Write about it. Where are you going to go? Who is going to go with you? What are you going to do? Which kind of vacation is it going to be—adventurous or relaxing? How?

*My \_\_\_\_\_ Vacation*

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

# 13 What's the Weather Like?

**A** Look at the photos. Describe the weather. Use words in the box. Use some words more than once.

**cold hot sunny dry windy cloudy rainy**



💡 It's hot and sunny.



1. \_\_\_\_\_



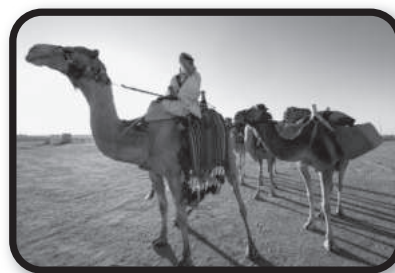
2. \_\_\_\_\_



3. \_\_\_\_\_



4. \_\_\_\_\_



5. \_\_\_\_\_

**B** Complete the sentences with weather words.

1. It's very \_\_\_\_\_ right now. It'll probably rain tonight.
2. It's going to \_\_\_\_\_ today. You need your umbrella.
3. I need my warm coat and hat. It's a very \_\_\_\_\_ day.
4. It will be 40 degrees Celsius today. That's \_\_\_\_\_!
5. Where are my sunglasses? It's really \_\_\_\_\_ today.
6. Look at the leaves blowing. It's really \_\_\_\_\_ today.





# 13 What's the Weather Like?

**C** What will the weather be like? Write a sentence for each place. Use two weather words.

City	Weather Icon	Temperature
Riyadh	Sunny	20°C / 68°F
Islamabad	Rainy	5°C / 41°F
Amman	Rainy	10°C / 50°F
Dubai	Sunny	21°C / 70°F
Kabul	Snowy	-1°C / 30°F
Cairo	Cloudy	14°C / 57°F



**Amman, Jordan**

*It'll be cool and rainy.*

1. Riyadh, KSA
2. Kabul, Afghanistan
3. Islamabad, Pakistan
4. Dubai, UAE
5. Cairo, Egypt

---

---

---

---

---

**D** Answer the questions.

1. What is the weather like today?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What will the weather be like tomorrow?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. What will the weather be like this weekend?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**E** Look at the photos. Answer the questions. Use the future tense with **will** and short answers.

**Will it rain this afternoon?**

*No, it won't.*

1. Mark is faster than Alberto. Will he win the race?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. It's 18°C and sunny. Will I need my coat?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Thomas does his English homework every day.

Will he pass the big test?

\_\_\_\_\_



**F** Write a question for each answer. Use the future tense with **will**.



*What will Richard's uncle eat on vacation?*

**Richard's uncle will probably eat fast food.**



1. \_\_\_\_\_

I'll probably play football this weekend.



2. \_\_\_\_\_

He'll probably drive to work.



3. \_\_\_\_\_

After college? Maybe I'll try to find a job in an engineering firm.



# 13 What's the Weather Like?

## G READING

Read the story.

Omar is living in a dorm at college this year. He really likes his classes, but he doesn't like living in the dorm. It's noisier in the dorm than it was at home. It's harder for him to study in the dorm, too. He likes his roommate, Fred. They hang out together a lot, and they both like to run in the morning. Omar and Fred are now good friends. But Fred never helps clean the room. He leaves his clothes and books all around. Their room is always messy. Omar eats in the college cafeteria, and he doesn't like the food there. There aren't any cooking facilities in the dorm. Omar's uncle's family lives near the college. They invited Omar to live with them next year.



Answer the questions. Give your opinions.

1. Where will Omar live next year?

---

2. Will he eat in the college cafeteria next year?

---

3. Will his room be clean or dirty next year?

---

4. Will his room be noisy or quiet next year?

---

## H WRITING

Write about the weather where you live. What will it be like in six months? What will you probably wear? What will you probably do?

### *The Weather in Six Months*

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

# 14 Could You Do Me a Favor?

**A** Look at the photos. Complete the conversations with the expressions in the box.

**I'll tell her.**                      **Could you lower your voices?**      **Can I borrow your cell phone?**  
**Let me help you carry that.**    **Of course, I'll say a few words.**    **Could you take a photo of me?**



**A:** Could you lower your voices?

**B:** Sure.

**1. A:** \_\_\_\_\_

**B:** No problem.



**2. A:** \_\_\_\_\_

**B:** Thank you.



**3. A:** Everyone wants you to say something.

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_



**4. A:** \_\_\_\_\_

**B:** Certainly.



**5. A:** Would you tell your mother to bring some plates?

**B:** Of course. \_\_\_\_\_

**B** Put the expressions from exercise **A** in the correct column.

**Offer**

\_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

**Request**

Could you lower your voices?  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_





# 14 Could You Do Me a Favor?

**C** Write requests and responses for each photo. Use **can**, **could**, **will**, and **would**.



**Q:** *Could I have a sandwich?*  
**A:** *Of course.*

**1. Q:** \_\_\_\_\_  
**A:** \_\_\_\_\_



**2. Q:** \_\_\_\_\_  
**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

**3. Q:** \_\_\_\_\_  
**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

**D** Read each story. Write the conversation.

**A customer at the hotel is carrying a heavy suitcase. A porter who works at the hotel offers to carry the suitcase. The customer refuses his offer.**

**Porter:** *Let me carry that for you.*  
**Customer:** *That's all right.*

**1.** A small girl wants a box of cookies from a high shelf at a supermarket. She can't get the box. A tall woman offers to get the cookies for her. The girl accepts her offer.

**Woman:** \_\_\_\_\_  
**Girl:** \_\_\_\_\_

**2.** Faris and Ali are leaving the office. Faris doesn't have a car. Ali offers to give Faris a ride home. Faris refuses the offer.

**Ali:** \_\_\_\_\_  
**Faris:** \_\_\_\_\_

**3.** Majid and Ahmed are eating dinner in a restaurant. The waiter brings the bill. Majid quickly picks up the bill. He wants to pay. Ahmed accepts his offer.

**Majid:** \_\_\_\_\_  
**Ahmed:** \_\_\_\_\_

**E** Describe the situations in which people are making requests. Use **want to**.

Adel, would you clean your room after dinner?

Sure, Mom.

 Mom wants Adel to clean his room after dinner.

Hey, Noura! Can you go to the mall with me this afternoon?

Sorry, Mona. I can't.

1.

Hanan, could you help your sister with her homework?

Not now, Dad. I'm busy.

2.

Ali, will you help me paint the house this weekend?

Certainly, Dad.

3.

**F** Unscramble the words to make sentences.

 ask / to meet / Yahya / in the library

*Ask Yahya to meet in the library.*

1. to the mall / your brother / ask / to drive you

2. to stop / your father / ask / by the store on his way home

3. the children / tell / their voices / to lower

4. your English teacher / ask / about the summer course in London

5. about the new museum / me / tell



## G READING

Read the conversation.

**Farah:** Hi, Amal. Thanks for the invitation to the graduation party. Can I do anything to help?

**Amal:** Sure. Could you bring some fruit salad?

**Farah:** Of course. Would you like me to bring a cake, too?

**Amal:** No, thanks. I already bought one.

**Farah:** Do you need any sandwiches?

**Amal:** I'll make sandwiches. But please bring some ice cream.

**Farah:** OK. I'll get some ice cream at the store. Should I come early to help?

**Amal:** No, you don't have to. But could you bring some paper plates?

**Farah:** Certainly. Do you have enough forks and spoons?

**Amal:** Yes, I do. Wait a minute. Could you bring some plastic cups?

**Farah:** No problem. And I'll bring a few bottles of soda.

**Amal:** Thank you. That would be great! I forgot about drinks.

**Farah:** Super! I'll see you tomorrow!

**Amal:** Great! Oh, one more thing. Could you bring your cookbooks?  
I want to learn new recipes.

**Farah:** Of course. I can't wait!



Write **T** for **True** or **F** for **False**.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Amal wants Farah to bring some fruit salad.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Farah is going to bring some ice cream.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Amal wants Farah to bring some paper cups.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Farah isn't going to bring any soda.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Farah can't bring her cookbooks.

## H WRITING

Imagine that you are helping a friend plan a graduation party. Write a conversation between you and your friend. How can you help your friend?

### Graduation Plans

*Me:* \_\_\_\_\_

*My Friend:* \_\_\_\_\_

# 15 Today's News

**A** Look at the photos of what people were doing this weekend. Complete the stories. Use the words in the box.

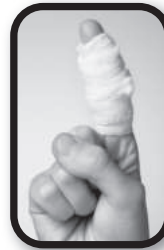
**knife**  
**snake**

**storm**  
**crowd**

**scream**  
**wound**

**attractions**  
**lightning**

1. My mother has a bandage on her finger. It's not a large \_\_\_\_\_, but it hurts. She was cutting some vegetables for dinner and cut her finger with the \_\_\_\_\_.



2. We visited the San Diego Zoo last week. One of the main \_\_\_\_\_ there is the Panda Trek. There was a huge \_\_\_\_\_ of people around the exhibit when the pandas came out to eat.



3. I have a very funny story. My uncle is a big man. He is strong and works at a construction site. A worker found a \_\_\_\_\_ under a rock. He showed it to my uncle. Immediately everyone heard a very loud \_\_\_\_\_. They all turned to see what was happening. Well, my uncle is very afraid of those long reptiles!



4. Last night, I looked out my window and saw my neighbor's house on fire. Just before that, we had a really bad \_\_\_\_\_. The sky turned very dark. There was lots of thunder and rain. And during this time, my neighbor's house was hit by \_\_\_\_\_, which caused the fire.





**B** Look at the picture. What wasn't/was happening at the park yesterday? Use the past progressive.



**man under the tree / eating cookies**

*The man under the tree wasn't eating cookies.*

*He was reading a newspaper.*

1. two boys / playing tennis

---



---

2. boy with cap / sleeping

---



---

3. father and son / watching TV

---



---

4. mother and daughter / reading books

---



---

5. man with the hat / eating ice cream

---



---

**C** Look at the photos of what people were doing. Answer the questions. Use short answers.



1. Was he eating pizza?

\_\_\_\_\_



2. Was he taking a test?

\_\_\_\_\_



3. Were they doing their homework?

\_\_\_\_\_



4. Were they skiing?

\_\_\_\_\_

**D** Make sentences using **when**. Then write questions for the sentences.

**Badria / sleep // phone / ring**

*Badria was sleeping when the phone rang.* \_\_\_\_\_

*What was Badria doing when the phone rang?* \_\_\_\_\_

1. they / swim // rain / start

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Ibrahim / do his homework // mother / call him for dinner

\_\_\_\_\_

3. the car / go too fast // traffic light / turn red

\_\_\_\_\_

4. we / watch the news on TV // lights / go out

\_\_\_\_\_



## E READING

Read the story.

Some friends of mine live in Alaska. They told me this story. My friends were really surprised last Tuesday afternoon. They were playing football after school when a moose walked across the football field! They stopped and stared. They followed the moose. When the moose walked across the park, some adults and children were picking up litter. They, too, stopped and stared. They followed the moose. When the moose crossed the street, some children were sitting in a school bus. They got out and followed the moose. Then the moose walked in front of a police car. The police officer was talking on his phone when he saw the moose. Finally, the moose walked to the bakery. It stood there and was smelling the bread. Everyone thought the moose was hungry and wanted some food. The entire town stopped and was watching the moose. People asked, "What can we do to help the moose? We need to get it back to the forest." Someone had an idea! Soon after, the moose was walking out of town following the bread truck!



Answer the questions.

1. What were the writer's friends doing when they saw the moose?

---

2. What were the people in the park doing when they saw the moose?

---

3. What were the children doing when they saw the moose?

---

4. What was the police officer doing when he saw the moose?

---

5. What was the moose doing in front of the bakery?

---

## F WRITING

Write a news article about something you saw or read about. What were people doing when the event happened? Give your article a title, too.

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

@saudienglish

# 16 Have You Ever...?

**A** Look at each group of words. Circle the word that doesn't belong.

- |                   |               |               |                     |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------------|
| 1. fish           | shark         | lobster       | camel               |
| 2. football       | baseball      | hang gliding  | basketball          |
| 3. bungee jumping | swimming      | water skiing  | surfing             |
| 4. driving a car  | cliff hanging | riding a bike | riding a motorcycle |

**B** Look at the photos. Complete the sentences.



1. Have you ever gone \_\_\_\_\_?



2. Ali has been \_\_\_\_\_. He went to France last year, and his father took photos.



3. Paul has never tried \_\_\_\_\_, but it's his brother's favorite sport.





# 16 Have You Ever...?

**C** Complete the chart. Use the correct forms of the verbs.

Present	Simple Past	Past Participle
	was / were	
do		
	ate	
		gone
	saw	
swim		
	took	
write		

**D** Complete the conversations. Use the present perfect.

1. **Asma:** I visited Qasr Al-Masmak last year.

**Hanan:** I \_\_\_\_\_ Qasr Al-Masmak several times.

2. **Faisal:** I rode a motorcycle last week.

**Majid:** That's nothing. I \_\_\_\_\_ a motorcycle many times.

3. **Ali:** I swam in the Red Sea on my vacation.

**Tariq:** That's great! My brother \_\_\_\_\_ there before, too.

4. **Yahya:** I saw a volcano near Madinah in Harrat Khaybar.

**Imad:** My father \_\_\_\_\_ volcanoes in three different countries.

5. **Fahd:** I ate pizza when I was in Naples, Italy.

**Saeed:** My family and I \_\_\_\_\_ pizza there, too.

6. **Refah:** My parents took a cruise two years ago.

**Amal:** My uncle \_\_\_\_\_ several cruises.



**E** Ask and answer about your experiences. Use the phrases from the photos. Write short answers.



play football



ride a roller coaster



hear a lion roar



eat Korean food

**Q:** *Have you ever played football?*

**A:** *Yes, I have.*

1. **Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

2. **Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

3. **Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

4. **Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

5. **Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_



break your leg



see a real camel

**F** Complete the sentences. Use the simple past or the present perfect.

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to Jeddah three times last year.
2. Adel \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) a whole pizza yesterday.
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ (not take) any tests in English.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (wake up) on time this morning?
5. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ (not play) tennis in years.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ you ever \_\_\_\_\_ (be) to another country?
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ (do) my homework after dinner.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ your little brother ever \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) his room?

**G READING**

Read the article.

**Fly Like a Bird**

Today we can fly in a plane. We can fly in a spaceship. And we can fly attached to a large kite—a hang glider. The modern hang glider has a very long history. It starts in China during the time of Emperor Wenxuan of Northern Qi. Around the year 550, the emperor used prisoners to be his test pilots. Then in 875, Abbas Ibn Firnas, who was 65 years old at the time, flew a “considerable distance” near Córdoba, Spain. He crashed and hurt his back. A century and a half later, in 1010, a man in England named Eilmer of Malmesbury jumped from a tower attached to a kite. He flew 200 meters before he crashed and broke both legs. These early flights ended in disaster because the gliders were not designed properly. These pioneers based their gliders on a bird’s wing, but they didn’t understand how a bird’s wing works.

In the 1880s, a German named Otto Lilienthal built a glider, and it did actually work like a bird’s wing. He became known as the father of modern hang gliding. He made over 2,000 flights with his hang glider. Unfortunately in 1896, he fell 17 meters during a flight and broke his spine. He died the next day.

Yet Lilienthal inspired two brothers in the United States—the Wright brothers. Lilienthal’s work influenced their first experiments. And thanks to the Wright brothers and Otto Lilienthal, we can fly from one country to another in several hours or less.



**Write T for True or F for False.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Hang gliding first started in China.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ An Englishman broke his arms when he crashed his hang glider.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Many people understood how a bird’s wing works long before the 1880s.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Otto Lilienthal is the father of modern hang gliding.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The Wright brothers never heard about Lilienthal.

**H WRITING**

Imagine what it is like to go hang gliding. Write about it.

*A Hang Gliding Adventure*

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

@saudienglish

# EXPANSION Units 12 – 16

**A** Complete the sentences. Use **be going to**.

- A:** Did he climb the mountain?  
**B:** No. \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow morning.
- A:** Did you go ice-skating this winter?  
**B:** No. \_\_\_\_\_ next winter.
- A:** Isn't he flying to Cairo today?  
**B:** Yes, he is. And he \_\_\_\_\_ back next week.
- A:** Didn't you visit Paris last year?  
**B:** Yes, I did. And I \_\_\_\_\_ Tokyo next year.
- A:** Did you stay in a hotel?  
**B:** No. I stayed with my aunt, but I \_\_\_\_\_ in a hotel in Tokyo.
- A:** Did you study for the history test?  
**B:** No, not yet. I \_\_\_\_\_ tonight.

**B** Look at the photos. Use them to make predictions.



**English is really hard this year for Hashim. He has a big test tomorrow. What will he do after school today?**

*He'll probably study for his English test after school.*



1. Jack enjoys this time of year. Every day is sunny and hot, and he goes to the beach. What will he do at the beach tomorrow?  
\_\_\_\_\_



2. It rained all last week. Now it's sunny and warm, and the grass is really tall at Fahd's house. What will Fahd do tomorrow?  
\_\_\_\_\_



3. Johnny got a new camera from his parents. He is always outside with it. What will he do outside tomorrow?  
\_\_\_\_\_





# EXPANSION Units 12 – 16

**C** Make a request and an offer for each situation.



**Sahar's friend, Amina, has a broken leg, and she has to carry a lot of books at school. It's really difficult for her.**

**Amina's Request:** *Sahar, would you carry my books?*

**Sahar's Offer:** *Let me carry your books to class.*

1. Sabah's mother has to go to the dentist, but she still wants to have dinner at the same time for her family. She calls Sabah.

**Mom's Request:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Sabah's Offer:** \_\_\_\_\_

2. Ahmed wants to buy a new laptop, but he needs help. He doesn't know how to choose a good laptop. His friend, Saeed, knows a lot about computers and technology.

**Ahmed's Request:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Saeed's Offer:** \_\_\_\_\_

3. Imad is really good at math. He is in the same class as Majid. Math is difficult for Majid, and there is a big test tomorrow.

**Majid's Request:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Imad's Offer:** \_\_\_\_\_

4. There's a new restaurant in town. Adel and Khalid would like to eat there.

**Adel's Request:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Khalid's Offer:** \_\_\_\_\_

**D** Make sentences with the past progressive and the simple past. Use **when**.



**Fahd / work (when) storm / hit**

*Fahd was working when the storm hit.*

1. Hameed / swim (when) rain / start

2. Qassim / read (when) bus / arrive

3. Fatima / cook dinner (when) power / go out

4. Amira / sleep (when) phone / ring

5. Adnan / surf online (when) he / receive Ali's email

# EXPANSION Units 12 – 16

**E** Write questions. Then answer them. Use the present perfect and short answers.



**you and your family / ever / visit / another country**

**Q:** *Have you and your family ever visited another country?* \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** Yes, we have. OR No, we haven't.

1. you / ever / go / to the desert

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

2. your father / ever / ride / camel

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

3. you / ever / eat / Indian food

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

4. your friend / ever / see / an elephant

**Q:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

**F** Choose the correct verb for each sentence.

1. If it rains tomorrow, they \_\_\_\_\_ hiking in the mountains.

a. don't go

b. won't go

c. haven't gone

2. Ahmed \_\_\_\_\_ many beautiful fish when he was scuba diving.

a. was seeing

b. has seen

c. saw

3. I'm nervous because this is the first time I \_\_\_\_\_ in an airplane.

a. am flying

b. have flown

c. will fly

4. When he was young, my brother \_\_\_\_\_ many sports.

a. played

b. was playing

c. has played

5. It's so cold outside. I think I \_\_\_\_\_ a cup of hot tea.

a. will have

b. am having

c. have

6. \_\_\_\_\_ you do me a favor and prepare a salad, please?

a. Could

b. Should

c. May



# Photo Credits

**SB: iii** (t)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services; **4** (br)©HOLA Images/age fotostock; **5** (br)©Michael Blann/Digital Vision/Alamy Images; **6** (t)©Laborant/Shutterstock, (br)©Robert Kneschke/Shutterstock; **7** (tr)©Nesrudheen Matathoor/Shutterstock, (tcr)©Ajmal Thaha/Shutterstock, (cr)©ksl/Shutterstock, (br)©Dr. Norbert Lange/Shutterstock; **12** (br)©Stockbyte/Superstock; **14** (tr)©StreetVJ/Shutterstock, (br)©George Doyle/Stockbyte/Getty Images; **15** (bkgd)©T. Lesia/Shutterstock, (tc)©xxlphoto/123RF, (tr)©Christian Hartmann/Shutterstock, (cr)©Monkey Business Images/Shutterstock; **16** (t)©Reservoir Dots/Shutterstock; **18** (tr)©Ienestan/Shutterstock, (t)©mastermind1/Shutterstock, (cl)©Ingram Publishing/Alamy, (cr)©Friends Stock/Shutterstock, (br)©Galyna Andrushko/Shutterstock; **19** (t)©EdBockStock/Shutterstock, (tr)©blackzheep/Shutterstock, (cl)©Brilliant-Tariq Al Nahdi/Shutterstock, (c)©Maksym Dykha/Shutterstock; **21** (t)©Hero Images/Image Source, (2)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (3)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (4)©Milosz Maslanka/Shutterstock; **22** (tc)©Billion Photos/Shutterstock, (tr)©Carlos Santa Maria/carlosphotos/123RF, (cr)©Hill Street Studios/Blend Images LLC; **23** (t)©Aya Abdallah/Shutterstock, (l)©Digital Archive Japan/Alamy Stock Photo, (r)©diplomedia/Shutterstock; **24** (c)©89studio/Shutterstock, (inset)©Vitaly Zorkin/Shutterstock; **26** (tr)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (cl)©Crystal Eye Studio/Shutterstock, (cr)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (bc)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (bc)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (br)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services; **27** (t)©Valua Vitaly/Shutterstock, (tcl)©Hero/Corbis/Glow Images, (tcr)©Hero/Corbis/Glow Images, (tr)©Fotokvadrat/Shutterstock; **29** (tr)©GaudiLab/Shutterstock, (cl)©Lisa S./Shutterstock, (tc)©Yanik88/Shutterstock, (cr)©Fotokostic/Shutterstock, (b)©Image Source, All rights reserved, (bc)©pressmaster/123RF; **30** (tr)©Jeff Schultes/Shutterstock, (cr)©CREATISTA/Shutterstock; **31** (tr)©tcsaba/Shutterstock, (tc)©Alfa Photostudio/Shutterstock, (cr)©Alfa Photostudio/Shutterstock; **32** Alex Kosev/Shutterstock; **34** (t)©Billion Photos/Shutterstock, (2)©Paulina Aleshkina/Shutterstock, (3)©Pavel Semenov/Shutterstock, (4)©iofoto/Shutterstock, (5)©Viktor1/Shutterstock, (6)©iofoto/Shutterstock, (7)©RESTOCK images/Shutterstock, (8)©Yifeng Xuan/Shutterstock, (9)©Tobik/Shutterstock, (10)©Elena Elisseeva/Shutterstock, (11)©Ledo/Shutterstock, (12)©Robyn Mackenzie/Shutterstock, (13)©pikselstock/Shutterstock, (14)©Eric Gevaert/Shutterstock, (15)©Surapol Manee/Shutterstock, (Add placement by hand)©Mariyana M/Shutterstock; **35** (t)©Sorbis/Shutterstock, (inset)©Krakenimages.com/Shutterstock, (tr)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (b)©chrisbrignell/Shutterstock, (bc)©Ingram Publishing/SuperStock; **36** (bc)©ILYA AKINSHIN/Shutterstock, (br)©John Kasawa/Shutterstock; **37** (tr)©Yulia Grigoryeva/Shutterstock, (tcr)©Syda Productions/Shutterstock, (cr)©wavebreakmedia/Shutterstock, (br)©djhayazaa/Shutterstock; **38** (tr)©Minerva Studio/Shutterstock, (cr)©Alexander Hadji/Shutterstock; **39** (tr)©gresei/Shutterstock, (t)©hgpro/Shutterstock, (tcr)©Andrey Starostin/Shutterstock, (cr)©Stephen H. Blöse/Shutterstock, (b)©fotoinfo/Shutterstock; **43** (tr)©kasakphoto/Shutterstock, (br)©Minerva Studio/Shutterstock, (cr)©TORWAISTUDIO/Shutterstock; **44** (tr)©logoboom/Shutterstock, (b)©rkl\_foto/Shutterstock; **45** (t)©Kzenon/Shutterstock, (tc)©muzsy/Shutterstock, (tr)©Edson Garcia/Shutterstock; **46** (t)©Africa Studio/Shutterstock, (2)©SGR/Shutterstock, (3)©margouillat/123RF, (4)©inewsfoto/Shutterstock, (5)©ANCH/Shutterstock, (6)©D. Hurst/Alamy Stock Photo; **47** (tr)©sarsmis/123RF, (b)©anitabonita/123RF; **50** (bkgd)©djhayazaa/Shutterstock, (cl)©Claudio Divizia/Shutterstock, (cr)©McGraw-Hill Education, (b)©fatir29/Shutterstock, (br)©Sean Pavone/Shutterstock; **51** (r)©CREATISTA/Shutterstock, (tcl)©The Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York, Edward C. Moore Collection, Bequest of Edward C. Moore, 1891, (tc)©Kent Johansson/Shutterstock, (tcr)©Rick Colls/Shutterstock, (bc)©Blanscape/Shutterstock, (bc)©Andrey Armyagov/Shutterstock, (bcr)©Pavel Gabzdyl/Shutterstock, (inset)©M. Aurelius/Shutterstock; **52** (br)©margouillat photo/Shutterstock; **53** (tr)©Ink Drop/Shutterstock; **54** (tr)©Sunshine Seeds/Shutterstock; **55** (tr)©fatir29/Shutterstock, (tcl)©Andrew V Marcus/Shutterstock, (br)©Teo Tarras/Shutterstock; **56** Comstock Images/Alamy Images; **57** (cr)©FoodCollection; **58** (t)©Dmitry Kalinovsky/Shutterstock, (tcl)©images etc/Shutterstock, (tc)©mentatdgt/Shutterstock, (tcr)©Blend Images/Image Source, (cl)©Ken Karp/McGraw-Hill Education, (cr)©Pressmaster/Shutterstock, (b)©Pixtal/AGE Fotostock; **59** (tr)©Lopolo/Shutterstock; **61** (tr)©Lars A. Niki; **62** (tr)©Diego Cervo/Shutterstock; **63** (tr)©Aleksander Rubtsov/Blend Images LLC; **67** (c)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services; **69** (t)©Wavebreak Media Ltd/Alamy Stock Photo, (2)©Romix Image/Shutterstock, (3)©Karin Dreyer/Blend Images LLC, (4)©Paul Bradbury/age fotostock, (5)©Pop Paul-Catalin/Shutterstock; **71** (tr)©Grigor Unkovski/Shutterstock, (cl)©Andres Rodriguez/Alamy Stock Photo, (cr)©Iconotec/Glowimages, (br)©Stockbyte/Getty Images; **73** irin-k/Shutterstock; **74** (t)©ShotPrime Studio/Shutterstock, (2)©Syda Productions/Shutterstock, (3)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (4)©I i g h t p o e t/Shutterstock, (1)©pcrucciatti/Shutterstock, (2)©Monkey Business Images/Shutterstock, (3)©Elnur/Shutterstock, (4)©glenda/Shutterstock, (5)©Africa Studio/Shutterstock, (6)©glenda/Shutterstock; **75** (t)©Gimas/Shutterstock, (tr)©Sasa Prudkov/Shutterstock; **76** (b)©BrunoWeltmann/Shutterstock, (bc)©ammar-s-96/Shutterstock, (br)©Magomed Magomedagaev/Shutterstock; **77** (t)©Zurijeta/Shutterstock, (1)©Africa Studio/Shutterstock, (2)©beeboys/Shutterstock, (3)©Nagy-Bagoly Arpad/Shutterstock, (4)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (5)©Elnur/Shutterstock, (c)©humbak/Shutterstock; **81** (r)©Ebtikar/Shutterstock; **84** (c)©Olga Popova/Shutterstock, (1)©Chimpinski/Shutterstock, (2)©Hekla/Shutterstock, (3)©Nattika/Shutterstock, (4)©Khvost/Shutterstock; **87** (cr)©Sony Herdiana/Shutterstock, (cl)©Gimas/Shutterstock; **90** (tr)©Alizada Studios/Shutterstock, (b)©LongJon/Shutterstock, (br)©Stanislav71/Shutterstock; **91** (t)©ARTYuSTUDIO/Shutterstock, (c)©Isabel2016/Shutterstock, (cr)©Will Thomass/Shutterstock; **92** (bc)©Oleksii Biriukov/Shutterstock, (br)©PhotoStock10/Shutterstock; **93** (br)©Angela N Perryman/Shutterstock; **94** (tr)©kathayut kongmanee/Shutterstock, (cr)©Dmitry Lobanov/Shutterstock; **95** (t)©Aya Abdallah/Shutterstock, (cl)©Digital Archive Japan/Alamy Stock Photo, (cr)©AFZAL KHAN MAHEEN/Shutterstock; **96** (l)©Boris15/Shutterstock; **99** (cr)©Darryl Leniuk/Blend Images LLC; **100** (cr)©Aldo Pavan/Danita Delimont Creative/Alamy Stock Photo, (b)©AFZAL KHAN MAHEEN/Shutterstock, (br)©Amar Grover/John Warburton-Lee Photography/Alamy Stock Photo; **101** (tr)©Alessandro Colle/Shutterstock; **102** (tr)©sdecoret/Shutterstock, (b)©Kiev.Victor/Shutterstock; **103** (tr)©designium/Shutterstock, (cl)©kavalenkau/Shutterstock; **106** (l-r, t-b)©Rusli Tan/Shutterstock, (2)©THPStock/Shutterstock, (3)©FrimuFilms/Shutterstock, (4)©Rusli Tan/Shutterstock, (5)©Delbars/Shutterstock, (6)©Benny Marty/Shutterstock, (7)©Gregory Zamell/Shutterstock, (8)©FrimuFilms/Shutterstock, (9)©Gregory Zamell/Shutterstock, (bkgd)©Balate Dorin/Shutterstock; **107** (t-b)©Delbars/Shutterstock, (2)©Benny Marty/Shutterstock, (3)©THPStock/Shutterstock, (bkgd)©Trin Wi/Shutterstock; **108** (br)©travelwild/Shutterstock; **109** (tr)©ERIC LAFFORGUE/Alamy Stock Photo; **110** (tr)©Laila R/Shutterstock, (cr)©Ivalin/Shutterstock; **111** (tr)©Hyserb/Shutterstock, (cl)©cpaulfell/Shutterstock; **112** (tr)©Constantinos Iliopoulos/Shutterstock; **114** (l-r, t-b)©Firefighter Montreal/Shutterstock, (2)©Nesrudheen Matathoor/Shutterstock, (3)©MarynaG/Shutterstock, (4)©Patrick Foto/Shutterstock, (5)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (6)©Djomas/Shutterstock, (7)©Pavel L Photo and Video/Shutterstock, (8)©rnl/Shutterstock; **115** (t)©elRoce/Shutterstock, (cr)©se media/Shutterstock; **117** (l-r, t-b)©ammar-s-96/Shutterstock, (2)©Gimas/Shutterstock, (3)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (4)©Brilliant-Tariq Al Nahdi/Shutterstock, (5)©Juan Alberto Casado/Shutterstock, (6)©Dr Ajay Kumar Singh/Shutterstock, (b)©Ungor/Shutterstock; **118** (tr)©mhmd575/Shutterstock, (br)©Nesrudheen Matathoor/Shutterstock; **119** (t-b)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (2)©fokke baarssen/Shutterstock, (3)©Dudits/Shutterstock; **120** (t)©Milanazavr/Shutterstock; **127** (tr)©Kdonmuang/Shutterstock; **128** (c)©Kletr/Shutterstock; **130** (c)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (bkgd)©Buncha Lim/Shutterstock; **135** (tr)©Tetyana Kaganska/Shutterstock, (cl)©Ann in the uk/Shutterstock; **138** (l-r, t-b)©Photology1971/Shutterstock, (2)©Phovoir/Shutterstock, (3)©seagames50 images/Shutterstock, (4)©Dan Breckwoldt/Shutterstock, (5)©Shawn Hamilton/Shutterstock; **139** (tr)©mosab ibra/Shutterstock, (cl)©LStockStudio/Shutterstock, (cr)©tnabeel/Shutterstock; **141** (tr)©I i g h t p o e t/Shutterstock, (1)©COLOMBO NICOLA/Shutterstock, (2)©Matyas Rehak/Shutterstock, (3)©BORODIN DENIS/Shutterstock, (4)©Natalia Lisovskaya/Shutterstock, (5)©Svetlana Privezentseva/Shutterstock, (6)©Ev. Safronov/Shutterstock, (7)©WitR/Shutterstock, (8)©Yaorusheng/Shutterstock, (c)©Sylvia Brataniec/Shutterstock, (cr)©Pikachu Ink/Shutterstock; **142** (tr)©VisionDive/Shutterstock, (cr)©Mogens Trolle/Shutterstock; **143** (t-b)©AFZAL KHAN MAHEEN/Shutterstock, (2)©Crystal Eye

# Photo Credits

Studio/Shutterstock, (3)©Moatasseem/Shutterstock; **144** (tr)©Tunatura/Shutterstock; **146** (tr)©H1N1/Shutterstock, (cr)©Kdonmuang/Shutterstock, (bkgd)©Pandapaw/Shutterstock; **147** (tr)©wavebreakmedia/Shutterstock, (1)©everst/Shutterstock, (2)©Robert Crum/Shutterstock, (3)©AFZAL KHAN MAHEEN/Shutterstock, (4)©Andrew V Marcus/Shutterstock, (5)©Dima Fadeev/Shutterstock, (6)©u3d/Shutterstock; **148** (tr)©FAYEZ NURELDINE/AFP via Getty Images; **149** (tr)©Paolo Bona/Shutterstock; **150** (cl)©Editura Edu/Shutterstock; **151** (br)©AnSuArt/Shutterstock; **152** (tr)©Richie Chan/Shutterstock, (cr)©KKulikov/Shutterstock, (bc)©Aeypix/Shutterstock, (br)©Kiev.Victor/Shutterstock.

**WB: 185** (1)©Pavel L Photo and Video/Shutterstock, (2)©hedgehog94/Shutterstock, (3)©Kzenon/Shutterstock, (4)©El Nariz/Shutterstock, (c)©Mike Liu/Shutterstock; **188** (tr)©Gabriel Georgescu/Shutterstock, (cr)©Radius Images/Alamy; **189** (1)©Alexander Kirch/Shutterstock, (2)©James Steidl/Shutterstock, (3)©diignat/Shutterstock, (4)©zef art/Shutterstock, (5)©Vinay Selvaraj/Shutterstock; **190** (tl)©Monkey Business Images/Shutterstock, (1)©JUPITERIMAGES/BananaStock/Alamy Stock Photo, (2)©Image Source, (3)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (4)©Hi Brow Arabia/Alamy Stock Photo, (5)©Hero Images/Getty Images; **193** (tl)©mirtmirt/Shutterstock, (inset)©Kubko/Shutterstock, (1)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (2)©Antonio Guillem Fernandez/Alamy Stock Photo, (inset)©sfam\_photo/Shutterstock, (3)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (inset)©jiunn/Shutterstock, (4)©Elnur Amikishiyev/Alamy Stock Photo, (5)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services; **196** (tr)©Monkey Business Images/Shutterstock; **197** (tl)©UfaBizPhoto/Shutterstock, (1)©amo-photo\_au/Shutterstock, (2)©Petrenko Andriy/Shutterstock, (3)©wandee007/123RF, (4)©Design Pics/Don Hammond, (5)©Rawpixel.com/Shutterstock; **198** (tl)©Milesz Maslanka/Shutterstock, (1)©Ebtikar/Shutterstock, (2)©Fotoinfo/Shutterstock, (3)©Dave and Les Jacobs/Blend Images/Alamy Stock Photo, (4)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (5)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services; **200** (t)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services; **201** (tr)©Moatasseem/Shutterstock, (tl)©Comstock/SuperStock, (br)©kosmos111/Shutterstock; **204** (tr)©wavebreakmedia/Shutterstock, (tr)©David Tadevosian/Shutterstock; **205** (tl)©ZouZou/Shutterstock, (1)©Monkey Business Images/Shutterstock, (2)©SeventyFour/Shutterstock, (3)©Ostill/Shutterstock, (4)©Robert Daly/age fotostock, (5)©Slatan/Shutterstock; **207** (bl)©El Nariz/Shutterstock, (1)©Monkey Business Images/Shutterstock, (2)©gulf eye/Shutterstock, (3)©bbarnard/Shutterstock; **208** (cl)©Khosro/Shutterstock, (1)©jirasaki/Shutterstock, (2)©GaudiLab/Shutterstock, (3)©Jacob Lund/Shutterstock, (4)©inarik/123RF, (tl)©svario photo/Shutterstock, (1)©Danny Smythe/Alamy Stock Photo, (2)©oksana2010/Shutterstock, (3)©Boltenkoff/Shutterstock, (4)©D. Hurst/Alamy Stock Photo; **209** (t-b)©imranahmedsg/Shutterstock, (2)©INSAGO/Shutterstock, (3)©Ankit M/Shutterstock, (4)©Friemann/Shutterstock, (5)©Studio DMM Photography, Designs & Art/Shutterstock, (6)©Maxisport/Shutterstock; **210** (tl)©Volodymyr Dvornyk/Shutterstock, (tr)©Ingram Publishing/Age Fotostock, (cr)©MaraZe/Shutterstock, (bc)©Lucy Stein/Image Source/Glow Images, (br)©Africa Studio/Shutterstock; **212** (tr)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services; **213** (1)©Cookie Studio/Shutterstock, (2)©Photographeer.eu/Shutterstock, (3)©ESB Professional/Shutterstock, (4)©carballo/Shutterstock, (5)©VIAVAL/Shutterstock, (6)©gelpi/123RF; **218** (tr)©Digital Media Pro/Shutterstock, (tr)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (1)©Elena Elisseeva/Alamy Stock Photo, (1)©D. Hurst/Alamy Stock Photo, (2)©Studio KIWI/Shutterstock, (2)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (3)©PhotosIndia.com/Glow Images, (3)©fizkes/Shutterstock, (4)©Luis Molinero/Shutterstock, (4)©Luis Molinero/Shutterstock, (5)©Image Source, (5)©Image Source, All rights reserved; **221** (tl)©Black Kings/Shutterstock, (1)©4 PM production/Shutterstock, (2)©Suzanne Tucker/Shutterstock, (3)©Dmitry Galaganov/Shutterstock, (4)©Ranta Images/Shutterstock, (5)©MaszaS/Shutterstock, (6)©Den Rozhnovsky/Shutterstock, (7)©Africa Studio/Shutterstock; **222** (l-r, t-b)©Fotofermer/Shutterstock, (2)©Anna Kucherova/Shutterstock, (3)©Kittichai/Shutterstock, (4)©Valery121283/Shutterstock, (5)©Sony Herdiana/Shutterstock, (6)©Pablo Rogat/Shutterstock, (7)©Daxiao Productions/Shutterstock, (8)©pchais/Shutterstock; **225** (l-r, t-b)©Mega Pixel/Shutterstock, (2)©STUDIO492/Shutterstock, (3)©Rozhnovskaya Tanya/Shutterstock, (4)©sagir/Shutterstock, (5)©Elnur/Shutterstock, (6)©Funstock/Shutterstock, (7)©Nadiia Korol/Shutterstock, (8)©hideto999/Shutterstock, (9)©Tarzhanova/Shutterstock, (10)©photokirov/Shutterstock; **226** (l-r, t-b)©Yalana/Shutterstock, (2)©AddyTsl/Shutterstock, (3)©A Mac/Shutterstock, (4)©James Flint/Shutterstock, (5)©Garsya/Shutterstock, (6)©Kozlik/Shutterstock; **228** (tr)©The Art Archive/Shutterstock; **229** (t-b)©Vladimir Kramin/Shutterstock, (2)©Cineberg/Shutterstock, (3)©FS11/Shutterstock, (4)©Galyna Andrushko/Shutterstock, (5)©Robert Nyholm/Shutterstock, (6)©zsolts\_uveges/Shutterstock, (7)©Songquan Deng/Shutterstock, (8)©Frontpage/Shutterstock; **231** (tr)©Pat Wellenbach/Shutterstock; **237** (tl)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (1)©Beyond Time/Shutterstock, (2)©bibiphoto/Shutterstock, (3)©Stephen Coburn/Shutterstock, (4)©Svetlana Orusova/Shutterstock, (5)©Nina Bondarchuk/Shutterstock; **239** (tr)©Xinyo/Shutterstock; **241** (tl)©Nate Hovee/Shutterstock, (1)©Jaromir Chalabala/Shutterstock, (2)©ILYA AKINSHIN/Shutterstock, (3)©Dmitry Molchanov/Shutterstock, (4)©Yuwarat Aor Chanawongse/Shutterstock, (5)©Hussain Faisal AL-Salehi/Shutterstock; **243** (l-r, t-b)©Anton Gvozdkov/Shutterstock, (2)©sport-point/Shutterstock, (3)©paffy/Shutterstock, (4)©littlenySTOCK/Shutterstock, (5)©Estrada Anton/Shutterstock, (6)©Helder Almeida/Shutterstock, (7)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (8)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services; **245** (l-r, t-b)©TeddyGraphics/Shutterstock, (2)©Monkey Business Images/Shutterstock, (3)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (4)©dotshock/Shutterstock, (5)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (6)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (7)©Estrada Anton/Shutterstock, (8)©Rido/Shutterstock; **246** (tl)©baibaz/Shutterstock, (1)©Martin Gardeazabal/Shutterstock, (2)©Davydenko Yuliia/Shutterstock, (3)©Irina Fischer/Shutterstock; **249** (l-r, t-b)©Csaba Deli/Shutterstock, (2)©AGorohov/Shutterstock, (3)©Foreverhappy/Shutterstock, (4)©Sergey Novikov/Shutterstock, (5)©Krakenimages.com/Shutterstock, (6)©Darin Echelberger/Shutterstock, (7)©Marc Rossmann/Shutterstock; **251** (1)©fotoinfo/Shutterstock, (2)©John Grummitt/Shutterstock, (3)©Sanzhar Murzin/Shutterstock, (4)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services; **253** (1)©JRP Studio/Shutterstock, (2)©Alexandra Lande/Shutterstock, (3)©zhukovvlad/Shutterstock; **254** (cr)©Fedor Selivanov/Shutterstock, (br)©Rawpixel.com/Shutterstock; **255** (tl)©OSTILL is Franck Camhi/Shutterstock, (1)©Lianys/Shutterstock, (2)©e2dan/Shutterstock, (3)©from my point of view/Shutterstock, (4)©Deyan Georgiev/Shutterstock, (5)©Tunde Gaspar/Shutterstock; **256** (tr)©Everett Collection/Shutterstock, (cr)©Everett Collection/Shutterstock; **257** (tr)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (1)©IKO-studio/Shutterstock, (2)©Gabe Smith/Shutterstock, (3)©shyshechka/Shutterstock.

**Cover** (bl)©adznano3/Shutterstock, (br)©kv naushad/Shutterstock.

